

2026

أشهر وأحب كتب تعليمية ، وأوسعها انتشاراً

Selah El-Telmeez

Since 1960

6

Sixth Primary
First Term



English





Sixth Year Primary

المواصفة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائي 2026 / 2025

(A) Listening

4 Marks

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A text of about **SIXTY (60)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options each.

One mark each

(B) Reading

10 Marks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.5 Marks

Learners are given **THREE (3)** MCQs vocabulary items based on the Set Books. They are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

Half a mark each

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5 Marks

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **THREE (3)** deletions is provided. **FOUR (4)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FOUR (4)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

Half a mark each

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7 Marks

An unseen literary or informational text from **NINETY (90)** to **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **SIX**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO (2)** MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

Half a mark each

B. THREE (3) open-ended questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

Two marks each

(C) Writing 16 Marks

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 1 Mark

TWO (2) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences. **Half a mark each**

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4 Marks

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

Two marks each

7 Punctuate the following:

4 Marks

TWO (2) simple statements (sentence **OR** question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

One mark each

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

7 Marks

Learners are asked to write not less than **FIFTY (50)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables..... etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph
- Email
- Blog
- Text message
- Diary

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary – One mark for grammar – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation)



Sixth Year Primary

قطاع المعاهد الأزهرية
المواصفة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائي 2026 / 2025

(A) Language Functions 10 Marks

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

Five words are given to complete a simple dialogue. Students are asked to read and complete the missing parts.

Two marks each

(B) Vocabulary and Structures 20 Marks

2 Read and circle the odd one out:

10 Marks

Five groups of words are given. Students are asked to circle the odd one out of each group and replace it with the correct word.

Two marks each

3 Choose the correct answer:

10 Marks

Ten multiple-choice items (five for vocabulary and five for grammar) are given. Students are asked to choose the correct answer.

One mark each

(C) Reading Comprehension 10 Marks

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A text is given up to 70 words. Students are asked to read it and answer the questions. (Three open-ended questions and two multiple-choice questions).

Two marks each

(D) Writing 20 Marks

5 Reorder:

10 Marks

Students are asked to reorder five groups of words to make five correct sentences.

Two marks each

6 Writing:

10 Marks

Students are asked to write a paragraph or an e-mail of five sentences based on the material in the set books. Five words are given and students are asked to use them to write the sentences.

Two marks for each sentence



Contents

	Page
- Reading Skills	10
- Punctuation Revision	12
- Unit (1): Amazing places in Egypt	13
- Unit (2): Our Nature	51
- Unit (3): Community Builders	87
- Review (1)	124
- Unit (4): Resources Around Us	133
- Unit (5): Made in Egypt	167
- Unit (6): The Water Savers	203
- Review (2)	217
- Final Tests	226
- Listening Scripts	253



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Maged and his family visit the beach in Alexandria twice a year because they enjoy the fresh air. Last summer, they went there. They arrived in the morning and spent the whole day there. They went to relax and have fun. Maged's father swam in the sea. The sea was very blue and looked beautiful. Maged built a sandcastle with his little brother, and they played football on the soft sand. In the evening, they ate fish at a restaurant. It was a wonderful trip, and they can't wait to go again!

1 Answering Wh-questions:

الإجابة عن أسئلة الاستفهام:

Question Words كلمات الاستفهام	Uses الاستخدامات	Examples from the Text أمثلة من النص	Answers الإجابات
Where أين	Asking about a place السؤال عن مكان	Where did they go?	They went to the beach in Alexandria.
When متى	Asking about time السؤال عن الزمن (الوقت)	When did they go there?	Last summer.
Why لماذا	Asking about a reason السؤال عن سبب	Why did they go there?	To relax and have fun.
Who من	Asking about a person السؤال عن شخص	Who swam in the sea?	Maged's father.
Which أي	Asking about a choice السؤال عن اختيار	Which food did they eat at the restaurant?	They ate fish.
How often كم مرة	Asking about the frequency of an action السؤال عن مدى تكرار فعل ما	How often do they visit the beach?	Twice a year.

Question: How often do Maged and his family visit the beach in Alexandria?

Step 1: Identify the question word: "How often" which asks about the frequency of an action.

الخطوة 1: تحديد كلمة الاستفهام: "How often" والتي تسأل عن مدى تكرار فعل ما.

Step 2: Find the sentence and write the answer: "They visit the beach twice a year."

الخطوة 2: أوجد الجملة واكتب الإجابة.

2 Identifying the Main Idea:

Definition

التعريف

- The main idea is the most important point in a text. It tells what the text is mostly about.
- الفكرة الرئيسية هي النقطة الأكثر أهمية في النص، فهي توضح ما يدور حوله النص غالباً.

Example

مثال

The general idea of the text is about Maged's family visit to Alexandria last summer.

3 Summarizing the Text:

Definition

التعريف

- A summary is a brief version of a text.
- الملخص هو نسخة مختصرة من النص.

Example

مثال

Maged and his family enjoyed their time at the beach in Alexandria last summer.

4 Determining the Meaning of Words:

Definition

التعريف

- Determining the meaning of words is understanding what a word means by looking at the sentences or words around it to find clues about its meaning.
- تحديد معنى الكلمات هو فهم ما تعنيه الكلمة بالنظر إلى الجمل أو الكلمات المحيطة بها العثور على أدلة حول معناها.

Example

مثال

It was a wonderful trip and they can't wait to go again!

- By looking at the sentence "they can't wait to go again!", we can guess that "wonderful" means "very good". So, the underlined word "wonderful" means "very good" or "amazing".

تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية:

Possible Questions

أسئلة محتملة

- The main idea of the text is about ...
- The text talks about ...
- What's the main idea of the text?
- What's the general idea of the text?
- ما الفكرة الرئيسية في النص؟

تلخيص النص:

Possible Question

سؤال محتمل

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
- لخص النص في جملة واحدة.

تحديد معنى الكلمات:

Possible Question

سؤال محتمل

- The underlined word "..." means "...".
- الكلمة "..." التي تحتها خط تعني "...".

Punctuation Revision

Period (.)

النقطة

- We add a **period** at the end of each sentence.

• نضع النقطة في نهاية كل جملة.

Ex: – My uncle works for a big company.

Question mark (?)

علامة الاستفهام

- When we write questions, we use a **question mark**.

• عندما نكتب أسئلة، نستخدم علامة الاستفهام.

Ex: – Could you go near the lions?

– Where do you live?

Comma (,)

الفاصلة

- When we write a list, we use a **comma**.

• عندما نكتب قائمة، نستخدم الفاصلة.

Ex: – I bought apples, oranges, bananas, and grapes.

Exclamation point (!)

علامة التعجب

- We use an **exclamation point** to show a strong feeling.

• نستخدم علامة التعجب لإظهار شعور قوي.

Ex: – The library is amazing!

Capital letters

الحروف الكبيرة

- We use **capital letters** as follows:

• نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة كما يلي:

– **M**y name is **F**arida.

بداية الجملة.

– **T**his is **F**ares and that is **D**ina.

أسماء الأشخاص.

– **R**amy can speak **F**rench.

أسماء اللغات المختلفة.

– **L**et's visit the **B**ritish **M**useum in **L**ondon.

أسماء البلاد، المدن، والأماكن المشهورة.

– **M**ark is **A**merican, but **A**hmed is **E**gyptian.

الجنسيات.

– **I** watch a movie every **F**riday.

أيام الأسبوع.

– **M**y birthday is in **A**pril.

شهور السنة.

– **N**ada and **I** live in **A**lexandria.

ضمير المتكلم (I) في أي مكان في الجملة.

1 Unit

Amazing places in Egypt

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Talk about visiting a traditional place in Egypt
- Talk about a day at school and your favorite activities
- Identify and accurately pronounce the phoneme /er/

- التحدث عن زيارة أحد الأماكن التقليدية في مصر
- التحدث عن يوم دراسي وأنشطتك المفضلة
- تحديد ونطق الصوت /er/ بدقة

Listening

- Describe traditions and the life in Egypt
- Identify activities in different parts in Egypt
- Describe school routines and favorite activities

- وصف التقاليد والحياة في مصر
- تحديد الأنشطة في مختلف أنحاء مصر
- وصف الروتين المدرسي والأنشطة المفضلة

Reading

- Find key information in cultural, personal, and factual texts
- Answer comprehension questions to show understanding of reading texts

- البحث عن المعلومات الأساسية في النصوص الثقافية والشخصية والواقعية
- الإجابة عن أسئلة الفهم لإظهار فهمك لنصوص القراءة

Writing

- Write sentences using the present simple correctly
- Write an informal email describing a typical day at school
- Create a poster about your governorate

- كتابة جمل باستخدام المضارع البسيط بشكل صحيح
- كتابة بريد إلكتروني غير رسمي يصف يوماً دراسياً عادياً
- إنشاء ملصق عن محافظتك

Lesson

1

A day in Egypt

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

Main Phrases

عبارات أساسية



buy souvenirs

يشترى الهدايا التذكارية



make furniture

يصنع الأثاث



play music

يعزف/يلعب الموسيقى



walk to a small museum

يمشي إلى متحف صغير



visit ancient sites

تزرع المواقع الأثرية



take photos

يلتقط صورًا

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

lamps	مصابيح	activities	أنشطة	market	سوق
streets	شوارع	bracelets	أساور	necklace	عقد
shops	محلات	bread	خبز/عيش	smell	رائحة
gate	بوابة	buildings	مبانٍ	designs	تصاميم
history	تاريخ	coins	عملات معدنية	tools	أدوات
drums	طبول	culture	ثقافة	Khan El Khalili	خان الخليلي
area	منطقة	workers	عمال	doors	أبواب

Adjectives الصفات

great	رائع/عظيم	old	قديم	exciting	مثير للاهتمام
colorful	مُلوّن	wooden	خشبي	fun	ممتع



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
watch يشاهد	watched	choose يختار	chose
laugh يضحك	laughed	see يرى	saw
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	stand يقف	stood
smile يبتسم	smiled	buy يشتري	bought
join ينضم	joined	take يأخذ	took
bake يخبز	baked		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

from the past من الماضي	in the evening في المساء
spend time يقضي وقتًا	learn about يتعلم عن
by hand باليد	for a few minutes لبضع دقائق

(Reading) main points

النقاط الأساسية في فقرة القراءة

- Maged and his family spend an exciting day visiting Khan El Khalili in Old Cairo. يقضي ماجد وعائلته يومًا مثيرًا في زيارة خان الخليلي في القاهرة القديمة.
- They buy souvenirs like bags, lamps, and bracelets. يشترون هدايا تذكارية كالحقائب والمصاييح والأساور.
- They walk through the old streets, see people baking bread, and watch workers making furniture by hand. يتجولون في الشوارع القديمة، ويشاهدون الناس يخبزون الخبز، ويشاهدون العمال يصنعون الأثاث بأيديهم.
- The family enjoys taking photos in the old streets and near the beautiful doors with Arabic designs. تستمتع العائلة بالتقاط الصور في الشوارع القديمة وبالقرب من الأبواب الجميلة ذات التصميم العربي.
- They visit a small museum that has old coins, clothes, and tools. They learn more about Egyptian history. يزورون متحفًا صغيرًا به عملات معدنية قديمة وملابس وأدوات. يتعلمون المزيد عن تاريخ مصر.
- In the evening, they visit ancient sites near the area. في المساء، يزورون مواقع أثرية بالقرب من المنطقة.



Listen, look, and read:

S B page 8

استمع، انظر واقرأ:



Play Audio

A Day in Egypt يوم في مصر

It is a great day in Cairo. Maged visits Khan El Khalili with his family. It is very exciting!

إنه يوم رائع في القاهرة. يزور ماجد خان الخليلي مع عائلته. إنه يوم مثير للغاية!

In the old streets, they can do many activities. First, they buy souvenirs from the market. There are many beautiful things like bags, lamps, and bracelets. His sister chooses a colorful necklace.



في الشوارع القديمة، يمكنهم ممارسة العديد من الأنشطة. أولاً، يشترون هدايا تذكارية من السوق. هناك العديد من الأشياء الجميلة كالحقائب والمصاييح والأساور. تختار أخته قلادة ملونة.

Then, they walk through the old streets and watch people baking bread. The smell is amazing! They also see shops where workers make furniture by hand. It is interesting to watch them work.

ثم يتجولون في الشوارع القديمة ويشاهدون الناس يخبزون الخبز. الرائحة رائعة كما يشاهدون محلات يصنع فيها العمال الأثاث يدوياً. من الممتع مشاهدتهم وهم يعملون.

They take more photos in the old streets. There are many beautiful doors and buildings with Arabic designs. Maged stands near a big wooden gate and smiles for the camera. Then, they walk to a small museum. It has old coins, clothes, and tools from the past. They learn many new things about Egyptian history.

يلتقطون المزيد من الصور في الشوارع القديمة. هناك العديد من الأبواب والمباني الجميلة ذات التصميم العربية. يقف ماجد بالقرب من بوابة خشبية كبيرة ويتسم للكاميرا. ثم يتوجهون إلى متحف صغير. يحتوي على عملات معدنية قديمة وملابس وأدوات من الماضي. يتعلمون الكثير عن التاريخ المصري.

They also see some children playing with small drums in the street. They laugh and enjoy the music. Maged's brother joins them for a few minutes. It is fun to play and enjoy the sounds of Old Cairo.

كما يشاهدون بعض الأطفال يلعبون بطبول صغيرة في الشارع. يضحكون ويستمتعون بالموسيقى. ينضم إليهم شقيق ماجد لوضع دقائق. كان من الممتع اللعب والاستمتاع بأصوات القاهرة القديمة.

In the evening, they visit ancient sites near the area. They are big and beautiful! They take many photos of them. It is a fun day. He loves spending time in Egypt and learning about its culture.

في المساء، يزورون المواقع الأثرية القريبة من المنطقة. إنها كبيرة وجميلة! يلتقطون لها العديد من الصور. إنه يوم ممتع. يحب قضاء الوقت في مصر والتعرف على ثقافتها.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



Play Audio

- 1 Maged and his family buy like bags and bracelets.
a. designs b. souvenirs c. markets d. clothes
- 2 They watch people bread and making furniture.
a. eating b. enjoying c. baking d. selling
- 3 They take photos near old buildings with designs.
a. English b. Chinese c. Italian d. Arabic
- 4 At the museum, they see old and tools.
a. coins b. statues c. music d. sites

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We visited many ancient in Cairo and took photos.
a. lamps b. sites c. bags d. bracelets
- 2 You can walk to a small to see old things from the past.
a. club b. shopping mall c. museum d. theme park
- 3 The shop has beautiful wooden made by hand.
a. furniture b. music c. bread d. streets
- 4 They bought from the market in Khan El Khalili.
a. souvenirs b. activities c. cultures d. areas
- 5 We take at places we visit.
a. music b. photos c. sites d. museum
- 6 The children played at the school party.
a. history b. shop c. music d. coin
- 7 He opened the and walked into the garden.
a. bag b. photo c. gate d. necklace
- 8 The walls have beautiful Arabic
a. designs b. music c. sounds d. cameras

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدمًا الكلمات في الصندوق:

fun – coins – learned – smelled

Ali and his friends visited a small museum in the old streets of Cairo. Inside, they saw old ⁽¹⁾, clothes, and tools from the past. The museum had many interesting things. They walked around and took photos. Ali ⁽²⁾ new things about Egyptian history. He enjoyed looking at the Arabic designs on the doors. The museum was quiet, and the visit was ⁽³⁾ and exciting.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جملًا:

1 loves – time – Maged – Egypt. – spending – in

2 the old – take – They – photos – streets. – in

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 sami stands near a wooden gate

2 They visited khan El Khalili yesterday

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

“Your visit to Old Cairo”

(enjoy – drum)

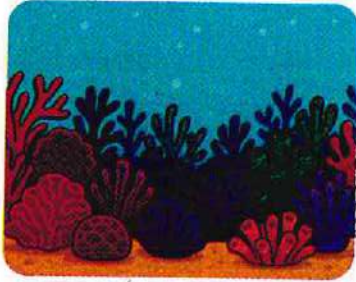
Lesson

2

The Beauty of Ras Mohamed

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



coral reefs

شعاب مرجانية



snorkel

يغطس



landscape

منظر طبيعي

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Sinai	سيناء	nature	طبيعة	plants	نباتات
dolphins	دلافين	mountains	جبال	sea	بحر
beach	شاطئ	area	منطقة	land	أرض
rules	قواعد	environment	البيئة	marine life	الحياة البحرية
culture	ثقافة	Bedouins	البدو	visitors	زوار
sea turtles	سلاحف البحر	mangrove trees	أشجار المانجروف	Ras Mohamed National Park	محمية رأس محمد

Adjectives الصفات

famous	مشهور	beautiful	جميل	protected	محمي
clear	نقي	safe	آمن	local	محلي
clean	نظيف	peaceful	مسالم/هادئ	important	مهم/هام



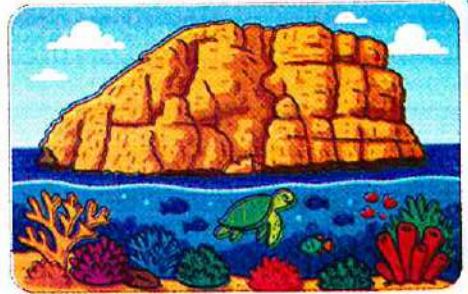
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
follow يتبع	followed	see يرى	saw
visit يزور	visited	swim يسبح	swam
snorkel يغطس	snorkeled	dive يغوص	dove
protect يحمي	protected	keep يُبقي/يحافظ على	kept

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

from all over the world من جميع أنحاء العالم	known for معروف/مشهور بـ
home to موطن لـ	take care of يعتني بـ

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It is known for its beautiful coral reefs, colorful fish, and clear blue sea. People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, snorkel, and dive.



رأس محمد محمية وطنية شهيرة تقع جنوب سيناء، مصر. مشهورة بشعابها المرجانية الخلابة، وأسماكها الملونة، وبحرها الأزرق الصافي. يزورها الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للسباحة والغطس والغوص.

The nature in Ras Mohamed National Park is amazing. The park is home to many kinds of animals and plants. You can see sea turtles, dolphins, and many types of birds. There are also mountains and mangrove trees near the beach.

الطبيعة في محمية رأس محمد الوطنية خلابة. تُعد المحمية موطنًا للعديد من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات. يمكنك مشاهدة السلاحف البحرية والدلافين وأنواع عديدة من الطيور. كما توجد جبال وأشجار مانجروف بالقرب من الشاطئ.



Ras Mohamed is a protected area. This means that people must take care of the land, sea, and animals. It is important to follow the rules to keep the park clean and safe.



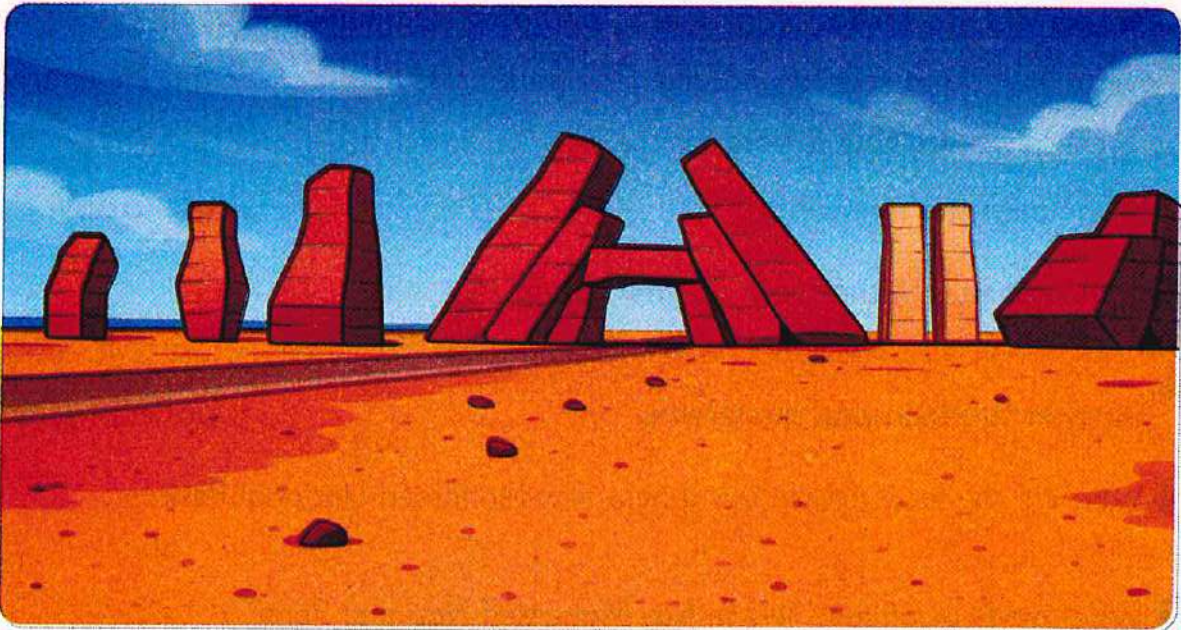
رأس محمد منطقة محمية، وهذا يعني أنه يجب أن يعتني الناس بالأرض والبحر والحيوانات. من المهم اتباع القواعد للحفاظ على نظافة المحمية وسلامتها.

In the park, visitors learn about nature, marine life, and how to protect the environment. They also learn about the culture of the local Bedouins who live nearby.

في المحمية، يتعرف الزوار الطبيعة والحياة البحرية وكيفية حماية البيئة. كما يتعرفون ثقافة البدو المحليين الذين يعيشون بالقرب منها.

Ras Mohamed is a great place for anyone who loves the sea, animals, and peaceful landscapes.

رأس محمد وجهة رائعة لكل من يعشق البحر والحيوانات والمناظر الطبيعية الهادئة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We saw many fish swimming near the reefs.
a. sky b. coral c. mangrove d. land
- 2 You can swim,, and dive in the Red Sea.
a. snorkel b. plant c. grow d. harvest
- 3 Ras Mohamed National Park is a area. This means we must take care of it.
a. awful b. protected c. dangerous d. dirty
- 4 Our teacher taught us about the life in the Red Sea.
a. desert b. forest c. mountain d. marine

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

destroy – dolphins – protect – beautiful

The marine life in Ras Mohamed National Park is rich and beautiful. The park is famous for its ⁽¹⁾ coral reefs and many kinds of fish. In the clear blue sea, visitors can see sea turtles, ⁽²⁾, and other sea animals. People come from all over the world to snorkel and dive. The park helps ⁽³⁾ marine animals and teaches visitors how to care for the sea.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- Ras Mohamed is in the south of sinai, Egypt

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 Who are the local people living near Ras Mohamed National Park?
- 2 What kinds of animals live in Ras Mohamed National Park?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

• نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Negative النفي

Question الاستفهام

I. Affirmative



I, You, We, They,
Plural noun (اسم جمع)

He, She, It,
Singular noun (اسم مفرد)

verb (infinitive) ...
(مصدر الفعل)

+

verb (infinitive) +
-s/-es/-ies ...

-s

لمعظم الأفعال.

Ex: - visit → visits

-es

للأفعال المنتهية بـ
(s-ss-sh-ch-x-o)

Ex: - brush → brushes

-ies

للأفعال المنتهية بـ
(حرف ساكن + y)

Ex: - fly → flies

Ex: - People from all over the world **visit** Ras Mohamed every year.



- She always **takes** photos of nature.





Unit 1

Amazing places in Egypt 1st term

2. Negative



I, You, We, They,
Plural noun

do not (don't)

+

He, She, It
Singular noun

does not (doesn't)

+

verb
(infinitive) ...

Ex: – We **don't** play
outside at night.



– Samah **doesn't** like
milk.



Yes/No question (السؤال بـ (هل)

3. Question



Do

I, you, we, they, plural noun

+

Does

he, she, it, singular noun

+

verb
(infinitive) ...?

Ex: **Do** you go to the club?

– Yes, I **do**.

– No, I **don't**.



Ex: **Does** Ayman enjoy diving in the sea?

– Yes, he **does**.

– No, he **doesn't**.



Wh-question (السؤال بأداة استفهام)

Question word
(كلمة الاستفهام)

+

do

I, you, we, they, plural noun

he, she, it, singular noun

does

+

verb
(infinitive) ...?

Ex: – Where **do** you live?
I **live** in Alexandria.



– Where **does** she work?
She **works** at a hospital.



Note

- Verb "to have" has (2) forms in the present simple tense: (has) with he, she, it, or a singular noun; and (have) with I, you, we, they, or a plural noun.

- الفعل "have" بمعنى «يمتلك/عنده» شكلان في زمن المضارع البسيط: (has) مع he, she, it أو اسم مفرد و (have) مع I, you, we, they أو اسم جمع.

Ex: – She has a nice dog.

– I have flowers in my garden.



Verb "to be" in the present simple tense

الفعل "be" في زمن المضارع البسيط

I → am He/She/It/Singular noun → is
You/We/They/Plural noun → are

1. Affirmative



Subject (فاعل) + am/is/are ...

Ex: – He **is** always interested in peaceful landscapes.



2. Negative



Subject + am/is/are + not ...

Ex: – The mangrove trees **are not** far from the beach.



3. Question



Am/Is/Are + subject ...?
Question word + am/is/are

Ex: **Are** there coral reefs in Ras Mohamed National Park?
– Yes, there **are**.



Ex: – Who **is** our guide on the trip? Mr. Maged **is** our guide.



Key words الكلمات الدالة

• always	دائمًا	• usually	عادةً
• often	غالبًا	• sometimes	أحيانًا
• never	أبداً	• every (day)	كل (يوم)
• in the (morning)	في (الصباح)	• on the weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 They sometimes books at the library after school.
a. reads b. read c. reading d. is reading
- 2 My friend football with me every weekend.
a. am playing b. plays c. playing d. play
- 3 He study math on Mondays.
a. don't b. aren't c. isn't d. doesn't
- 4 You home at 3 o'clock every day.
a. is coming b. comes c. coming d. come
- 5 your sister wear glasses?
a. Doing b. Do c. Does d. Is
- 6 I interested in science.
a. is b. are c. does d. am
- 7 Where the children play after lunch?
a. do b. does c. are d. doing
- 8 I don't cold water in winter.
a. drinking b. drank c. drink d. drinks

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 I (takes) the same bus to school every day.
- 2 Ras Mohamed (are) in the south of Sinai.
- 3 (Do) your teacher give homework on Sundays?
- 4 Do you (riding) your bike to the club?
- 5 They (isn't) go to bed late on school nights.
- 6 Mom and dad (doesn't) drive to work. They walk to it.
- 7 The park (have) many kinds of animals.
- 8 (Is) they new teachers in our school? – Yes, they are.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ras Mohamed National Park is a famous park in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It is known for its beautiful coral reefs, colorful fish, and clear blue sea. People from all over the world visit the park to swim, snorkel, and dive. The nature in the park is amazing. You can see sea turtles, dolphins, and many kinds of birds. There are also mangrove trees and mountains near the beach. Ras Mohamed is a protected area. This means we must take care of the land, sea, and animals. Visitors also learn about marine life and local Bedouin culture.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text mainly talks about National Park.
a. Alexandria b. Port Said c. Ras Mohamed d. Cairo
- 2 The underlined word "famous" means very
a. awful b. popular c. scary d. dangerous

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 Where is Ras Mohamed National Park located?

.....

- 4 What can visitors see in the park?

.....

- 5 Why must people take care of the park?

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 My brother (not play) the guitar every weekend.
- 2 Why do they (visits) their grandparents on Fridays?



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

students	طلاب	responsibilities	مستويات	villagers	أهل القرية
factories	مصانع	boats	قوارب/مراكب	sea breeze	نسيم بحر
fishermen	صيادون	carpets	سجاد	rugs	سجاد صغير
crops	محاصيل	life	حياة	villages	قرى
wool	صوف	voice recordings	تسجيلات صوتية	the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية

Adjectives الصفات

daily	يومي	cool	بارد	wooden	خشبي
busy	مشغول	natural	طبيعي	quiet	هادئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
describe يصف	described	know يعرف	knew
listen يستمع	listened	sit يجلس	sat
clean ينظف	cleaned	grow ينمو/يزرع	grew
support يدعم	supported	spin يغزل	spun
repair يصلح	repaired	weave ينسج	wove
fish يصطاد سمكًا	fished	sell يبيع	sold
water يروي/يسقي	watered	catch يصطاد	caught
harvest يحصد	harvested	feed يُطعم	fed

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

"Know Egypt" project	مشروع "اعرف مصر"	on Fridays	في أيام الجمعة
Great job!	عمل عظيم	work in	يعمل في



Definitions

تعريفات

accompany يرافق/يصاحب	to go somewhere with another person أن تذهب إلى مكان ما مع شخص آخر
looms أنوال/آلات نسيج	machines for making cloth or carpets آلات لصنع القماش أو السجاد
fishing net شبكة صيد	a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish أداة مصنوعة من الجبل أو الخيط تُستخدم لصيد الأسماك
dye يصبغ	to color cloth or wool using a special liquid أن تلوّن القماش أو الصوف باستخدام سائل خاص

Listen, look, and read:

استمع، انظر واقرأ:



Play Audio

Mr. Nader : As part of our "Know Egypt" project, we'll listen to four voice recordings from four students. They'll describe life, work, and daily responsibilities in their villages.



يوصفه جزءًا من مشروعنا "اعرف مصر"، سنستمع إلى أربعة تسجيلات صوتية لأربعة طلاب. سيصفون الحياة والعمل والمسؤوليات اليومية في قُراهم.

Amina : Hello! I'm Amina from Ezbet El Borg in Damietta. People here are fishermen. I accompany my father to catch fish early in the morning. Some villagers work in fish factories or repair boats. We eat fish almost every day and enjoy the cool sea breeze.

أهلاً أنا أمينة من عزبة البرج بدمياط. الناس هنا صيادون. أرافق والدي لصيد السمك في الصباح الباكر. يعمل بعض أهل القرية في مصانع الأسماك أو في إصلاح القوارب. نأكل السمك كل يوم تقريبًا ونستمتع بنسيم البحر البارد.

Omar : My name is Omar. I live in Shakhloba in Kafr El Sheikh near Lake Manzala. People fish using small wooden boats. I help my uncle clean the fishing nets. Some women also help catch fish. In the evening, we sit together and drink hot tea outside.

اسمي عُمر، أعيش في قرية شخلوبة في كفر الشيخ بالقرب من بحيرة المنزلة. يصطاد الناس السمك باستخدام قوارب خشبية صغيرة. أساعد عمي في تنظيف شباك الصيد. كما تساعد بعض النساء في صيد السمك. في المساء، نجلس معًا ونشرب الشاي الساخن في الخارج.



Salma : Hi! I'm Salma from Qutur in Gharbia. My family grows fruits and vegetables. We water the plants, harvest the crops, and feed our animals. On Fridays, we go to the market to sell food. Life is quiet, but we are always busy.

مرحبًا! أنا سلمى من قطور بالغربية. عائلتي تزرع الفواكه والخضراوات. نسقي النباتات، ونحصد المحاصيل، ونطعم حيواناتنا، نذهب إلى السوق لبيع الطعام أيام الجمعة. الحياة هادئة، لكننا دائمًا مشغولون.

Hassan : Hi! I'm Hassan from Bashandy, a village in the Dakhla Oasis in the Western Desert. People in my village make carpets, rugs, and crafts. My family spins wool and weaves it on looms. I help my mother dye the wool with natural colors. Some visitors come to buy rugs from the village shops.

مرحبًا! أنا حسن من بشندي، قرية في واحة الداخلة بالصحراء الغربية. يصنع أهل قريتي السجاد والبسط والمشغولات اليدوية. تغزل عائلتي الصوف وتنسجه على الأنوال. أساعد والدتي في صباغة الصوف بألوان طبيعية. يأتي بعض الزوار لشراء السجاد من متاجر القرية.

Mr. Nader : Thank you! These villages show how people in Egypt live, work, and support their families every day. Great job!

شكرًا لكم! تُظهر هذه القرى كيف يعيش الناس في مصر ويعملون ويعولون أسرهم يوميًا. عمل رائع!

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Amina's village is known for growing fruits and vegetables. ()
- 2 Omar helps his uncle clean fishing nets near Lake Manzala. ()
- 3 Salma's family sells food at the market on Fridays. ()
- 4 Hassan's family makes carpets using machines in a big factory. ()

4. (X)

3. (✓)

2. (✓)

1. (X)

Answers:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 are machines for making cloth or carpets.
 a. Boats b. Factories c. Villages d. Looms
- 2 Helping my little brother is one of my
 a. games b. questions c. responsibilities d. friends
- 3 The students listened to the before answering the questions.
 a. wool b. voice recordings c. crops d. rugs
- 4 To is to color cloth or wool using a special liquid.
 a. fish b. water c. dye d. harvest

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

repair – accompany – harvest – fishing nets

In Kafr El-Sheikh, many families work in fishing. Aya wakes up early to ⁽¹⁾ her father on his boat. In Dakahlia, people clean their ⁽²⁾ before they go out to fish in Lake Manzala. In a small village in Fayoum, Mahmoud and his brothers grow fruit and vegetables. They take care of the farm and ⁽³⁾ the crops when they are ready.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- I'm amina from Ezbet El Borg
-

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 What do people in Ezbet El Borg do?
-

- 2 Where is Hassan from?
-

B Pronunciation

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

To say the /er/ sound, open your mouth slightly, say "eh," then add the /r/ sound. It's one sound, like in "wear" or "stare".

لنطق صوت /er/ افتح فمك قليلاً، وقُلْ "eh" ثم أضف صوت /r/. إنه صوت واحد، كما في كلمتي "wear" أو "stare".

/er/ sound

"air"

spelling



airport

مطار

"ear"

spelling



bear

دب



wear

يرتدي

"are"

spelling



square

ميدان



scared

خائف



stare

يحدق

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

"ear" spelling

pear

كمثرى

"are" spelling

hare

أرنب بري

nightmare

كابوس

"ere" spelling

where

أين

there

هناك

Tryout



Listen and circle the word with the /er/ sound out:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي بها صوت الـ /er/:

1 bird – stare – shirt – skirt

2 first – dirt – thirsty – airport



Play Audio

Answers:

1. stare

2. airport

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many amazing villages in Egypt. People in these villages work hard and make many things. In Ezbet El Borg, in Damietta, most people work as fishermen, and others work to repair the fishing boats. In Qutur, in Gharbia, people grow fruits and vegetables. They water plants, harvest crops, and feed animals. In Bashandy, a village in the Dakhla Oasis, people make carpets, rugs, and crafts. They spin wool and weave it on looms. Looms are machines for making cloth or carpets. All these villages show how people in Egypt work hard.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text is about in Egypt.
 a. villages b. cities c. rivers d. capitals
- 2 People in Bashandy spin wool and weave it on
 a. nets b. crops c. looms d. boats

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 Where is Ezbet El Borg?

.....

- 4 What do people grow in Qutur?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- 1 go – the market – food. – to sell – We – to

.....

- 2 her – mother – She – the wool. – dye – helps

.....

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



take out books

يُخرج الكتب



salute the flag

يحيون العلم



pack schoolbag

تُحزم الحقيبة المدرسية



play in the playground

يلعبون في ملعب المدرسة

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	vegetables	خضراوات	cheese	جُبْن
cotton	قطن	subject	مادة دراسية	flag	عَلَم
sandwich	ساندوتش	science	العلوم	topics	مواضيع
break	استراحة/فسحة	clothes	ملابس	lunch	وجبة الغداء
later	لاحقاً	social studies	دراسات اجتماعية	religion	دين
beans	فاصوليا	factories	مصانع	cement	الأسمنت
computer	الحاسب الآلي (كمبيوتر)	P.E. (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية	national anthem	النشيد الوطني

**Adjectives الصفات**

typical	تقليدي/معتاد	first	الأول	quick	سريع
tricky	صعب	short	قصير	tired	متعب
happy	سعيد	favorite	مفضل	little	قليل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
hope يأمل	hoped	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
rest يستريح	rested	sing يغني	sang
start يبدأ	started	begin يبدأ	began
end يُنهي	ended	feel يشعر	felt
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	tell يخبر	told
work يعمل	worked		
prepare يُحضّر/يُعد	prepared		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

at noon عند الظهر	go home يذهب للمنزل
I hope you're doing well. أتمنى أن تكون بخير.	stand in line يقف في الطابور
try my best أبذل قصارى جهدي	What about you? ماذا عنك؟
look like يبدو	get dressed يرتدي ملابسه
do homework يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي	around 6:30 a.m. حوالي الساعة 6:30 صباحاً



Unit

1

Amazing places in Egypt 1st term

New Message

From : fady@gmail.com

To : mark@gmail.com

Subject : Daily School Life in Egypt

Hi Mark,

مرحبًا مارك،

How are you? I hope you're doing well. I want to tell you about a typical day at my school here in Egypt.

كيف حالك؟ أتمنى أن تكون بخير. أريد أن أخبرك عن يوم عادي في مدرستي هنا في مصر.

My day starts early. I wake up around 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and have a quick breakfast—usually bread, cheese, and fruit.



يبدأ يومي باكراً. أستيقظ حوالي الساعة 6:30 صباحاً، أرتدي ملابستي، وأتناول وجبة الإفطار سريعاً - عادةً خبزاً وجبناً وفاكهة.

The school day begins at 7:30. We start it by standing in line, saluting the flag, and singing the national anthem. Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons. Our first subject is usually Arabic.

يبدأ اليوم الدراسي الساعة 7:30 صباحاً. نبدؤه بالوقوف في طابور، وتحية العلم، وغناء النشيد الوطني. ثم نتوجه إلى فصولنا الدراسية ونبدأ دروسنا. مادتنا الأولى عادةً هي اللغة العربية.

Next, we have subjects like math, English, and science. Some topics are a bit tricky, but I try my best. At around 10:15, we have a short break. I usually eat a sandwich, play with my friends, chat and laugh.

بعد ذلك، لدينا مواد مثل الرياضيات، اللغة الإنجليزية، والعلوم. بعض الموضوعات صعبة بعض الشيء، لكنني أبذل قصارى جهدي. في حوالي الساعة 10:15، نأخذ استراحة قصيرة. عادةً ما أتناول ساندويتشاً، ألعب مع أصدقائي، أتحدث وأضحك.

Later, we have more lessons like social studies, religion, or computer. I enjoy learning how to use the computer in class. However, my favorite subject is P.E.

لاحقاً، لدينا المزيد من الدروس، مثل الدراسات الاجتماعية، الدين، أو الكمبيوتر. أستمتع بتعلم كيفية استخدام الكمبيوتر في الفصل. مع ذلك، مادتي المفضلة هي التربية البدنية.

The school day ends at 1:30 p.m. I usually feel a bit tired, but I'm happy after a good day. I go home, eat lunch, rest a little, and then do my homework.

ينتهي اليوم الدراسي الساعة 1:30 ظهراً. عادةً ما أشعر ببعض التعب، لكنني أشعر بالسعادة بعد يوم جيد. أعود إلى المنزل، أتناول الغداء، وأستريح قليلاً، ثم أؤدي واجباتي المدرسية.

That's what a school day looks like for me. What about you?

هكذا يبدو يومي الدراسي. ماذا عنك؟

Bye for now,

إلى اللقاء،

Fady

فادي



Send

**Tip!**

- You can send an informal email to a friend or someone you know very well. Make sure you use the present simple tense to talk about your routine or a typical day.

• يمكنك إرسال بريد إلكتروني غير رسمي إلى صديق أو شخص تعرفه جيدًا. احرص على استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن روتينك اليومي أو يومك المعتاد.

Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح التالية:

Tips for writing an informal email

نصائح لكتابة بريد إلكتروني غير رسمي



- Make sure you write the sender's and the receiver's email address.

تأكد من كتابة عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل والمستقبل.

Ex: From: fady@gmail.com

To: mark@gmail.com

- Write the subject of the email that tells what your email is about.

اكتب موضوع البريد الإلكتروني الذي يوضح محتوى رسالتك الإلكترونية.

Ex: Daily School Life in Egypt

- Start with an informal greeting.

ابدأ بتحية غير رسمية.

Ex: Hi Mark,

- Use contractions like (I'm).

استخدم الاختصارات مثل (I'm).

- Write the main body with details and in a friendly way.

اكتب نص الموضوع الرئيسي بالتفاصيل وبطريقة ودية.

Ex: I wake up around 6:30 a.m.

- Close your email in a friendly tone.

اختتم بريدك الإلكتروني بنبرة ودية.

Ex: Bye for now,

- Write the sender's signature.

اكتب توقيع المرسل.

Ex: Fady

- Use first person pronouns.

استخدم ضمائر المتكلم.

Ex: my school

Formal expressions	تعابير رسمية	Informal expressions	تعابير غير رسمية
Hello	مرحبًا	Hi	أهلاً
normal	عادي	typical	تقليدي/معتاد
talk	يتحدث	chat	يتحدث/يدرّش
work hard	أعمل بجد	try my best	أبذل قصارى جهدي



Unit 1

Amazing places in Egypt 1st term

Making a Poster About Daily Life in a Governorate

صنع ملصق عن الحياة اليومية في محافظة ما



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Explore the Daily Life in Beni Suef

title
عنوان

استكشف الحياة اليومية في بني سويف

detailed
sentences
جُمْل مَفْصَلَة



People wake up early, clean the house and prepare breakfast.

يستيقظ الناس مبكرًا، وينظفون المنزل ويعدون وجبة الإفطار.



Many people work on farms. They grow cotton, beans, and vegetables.

يعمل الكثير من الناس في المزارع. حيث يزرعون القطن والفاصوليا والخضراوات.



Some work in factories. They make cement and clothes.

بعضهم يعمل في المصانع. يصنعون الأسمنت والملابس.

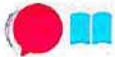


picture
صورة

At noon, families eat lunch together.

They eat rice, bread, and vegetables.

عند الظهر، تتناول العائلات وجبة الغداء معًا. يأكلون الأرز والخبز والخضراوات.



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح التالية:

Tips for making a poster about daily life

نصائح لصنع ملصق عن الحياة اليومية



- Choose a clear and attractive title.
- Write detailed sentences.
- Glue expressive pictures or drawings.

اختر عنوانًا واضحًا وجذابًا.

اكتب جُمْلًا مَفْصَلَة.

الصق صورًا أو رسوماتٍ معبرة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We the flag in the morning.
a. start b. try c. salute d. hope
- 2 In the classroom, the teacher asked us to out our books.
a. chat b. salute c. take d. play
- 3 They work in a cement
a. factory b. lesson c. topic d. flag
- 4 Adam, your schoolbag now.
a. rest b. go c. drive d. pack

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

national – around – typical – classroom

My name is Nour. I like to wake up early every day. I wake up ⁽¹⁾ 6:00 a.m. I get dressed and I have breakfast. I leave the house and I walk to school. The school starts at 7:00. We salute the flag and sing the ⁽²⁾ anthem. I go to the ⁽³⁾ and begin my lessons. The school day ends at 2:30 p.m. I go home and eat lunch.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

- 1 doing – are – I – well. – hope – you
- 2 breakfast. – They – prepare – clean – and – the house

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- They grow cotton, beans and vegetables

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

"Your daily school life"

(start – subjects)

Vocabulary

designs	تصاميم	gate	بوابة	coins	عملات معدنية
tools	أدوات	history	تاريخ	drums	طبول
area	منطقة	land	أرض	rules	قواعد
environment	البيئة	wool	صوف	culture	ثقافة
Bedouins	البدو	make furniture	يصنع الأثاث	take photos	يلتقط صورًا
religion	دين	landscape	منظر طبيعي	carpets	سجاد
cement	الأسمنت	voice recordings	تسجيلات صوتية	snorkel	يغطس
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	visit ancient sites	تزر المواقف الأثرية	play music	يعزف/يلعب الموسيقى
national anthem	النشيد الوطني	buy souvenirs	يشترى الهدايا التذكارية	walk to a small museum	يمشي إلى متحف صغير

Language

Present simple tense

- We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.
- نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين.

Affirmative



I, You, We, They, Plural noun + **verb (infinitive)** ...
 He, She, It, Singular noun + **verb (infinitive) + -s/-es/-ies**...

- Ex:** – People from all over the world **visit** Ras Mohamed every year.
 – She always **takes** photos of nature.

Negative



Subject + **don't/doesn't** + **verb (infinitive)** ...

- Ex:** – We **don't** play outside at night.
 – Samah **doesn't** like milk.

Yes/No question



Do/Does + subject + **verb (infinitive)** ...?

- Ex:** – **Do** you go to the club?
 – **Does** Ayman enjoy diving in the sea?

Wh-question



Question word + **do/does** + subject + **verb (infinitive)** ...?

- Ex:** – Where **do** you live? – Where **does** she work?



Reading in Points

Lesson 1

A day in Egypt

- Maged and his family buy souvenirs like bags, lamps, bracelets, and a colorful necklace from the market in Khan El Khalili.

يشترى ماجد وعائلته هدايا تذكارية كالحقائب والمصاييح والأساور وقلادة مُلوّنة من سوق خان الخليلي.

- They walk through the old streets and watch people baking bread and making furniture by hand.

يتجولون في الشوارع القديمة ويشاهدون الناس يخبزون الخبز ويصنعون الأثاث بأيديهم.

- They take photos of beautiful doors and buildings with Arabic designs.

يلتقطون صورًا لأبواب ومبانٍ جميلة بتصاميم عربية.

- They visit a small museum to see old coins, clothes, and tools, and learn about Egyptian history.

يزورون متحفًا صغيرًا لمشاهدة العملات المعدنية القديمة والملابس والأدوات، ويتعلمون التاريخ المصري.

- They see children playing with drums in the streets. They enjoy music, visit ancient sites, and explore big beautiful places.

يشاهدون أطفالًا يلعبون بالطبول. يستمتعون بالموسيقى ويزورون المواقع الأثرية ويستكشفون الأماكن الكبيرة والجميلة في المساء.

Lesson 2

The Beauty of Ras Mohamed

- Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai, Egypt.

رأس محمد محمية طبيعية شهيرة تقع جنوب سيناء، مصر.

- People visit it to swim, snorkel, and dive.

يزورها الناس للسباحة والغطس والغوص.

- The park is home to sea turtles, dolphins, birds, and many plants.

تُعد المحمية موطنًا للسلاحف البحرية والدلافين والطيور والعديد من النباتات.

- Ras Mohamed is a protected area, and people must keep it clean.

رأس محمد منطقة محمية، ويجب على الناس الحفاظ على نظافتها.

- Visitors learn about nature, marine life, and the culture of local Bedouins.

يتعرف الزوار الطبيعة والحياة البحرية وثقافة البدو المحليين.

Lessons 4&5

A Day in My School/Think and Create

- Fady's day starts early; he wakes up around 6:30 a.m.

يبدأ يوم فادي مبكرًا. يستيقظ حوالي الساعة 6:30 صباحًا.

- Fady stands in line, salutes the flag, and sings the national anthem at school.

يقف فادي في الصف، يُحيي العلم، ويغني النشيد الوطني في المدرسة.

- Fady goes to the classroom and begins his lessons.

يذهب فادي إلى الفصل ويبدأ دروسه.

- School ends at 1:30 p.m. Then, Fady goes home, eats lunch, rests, and does homework.

تنتهي المدرسة الساعة 1:30 ظهرًا. ثم، يذهب فادي إلى المنزل، يتناول الغداء، يستريح، ويقوم بواجبه المنزلي.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

ثقافة	يشترى الهدايا التذكارية
طبول	يصنع الأثاث
مُلَوَّن	تزرور المواقع الأثرية
ممتع	يعزف/يلعب الموسيقى
رائع	يلتقط صورًا
مثير للاهتمام	محلات
مصاييح	بوابه

Lesson (2)

قواعد	شعاب مرجانية
جبال	يغطس
الحياة البحرية	منظر طبيعي
مشهور	طبيعة
محلي	شاطئ
محمي	البدو

Lesson (3)

سجاد	مستوليات
أهل القرية	صوف
يحدق	دب
يرتدي	مطار
خائف	ميدان

Lessons (4&5)

يُخرج الكتب	يلعبون في ملعب المدرسة
يحيون القلم	تُحزم الحقيبة المدرسية
النشيد الوطني	قطن
الأسمنت	استراحة/فسحة



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
watch	watched	dive	
buy	bought	know	
take		clean	
learn		grow	
choose		support	
enjoy		repair	
smile		spin	
see		weave	
bake		swim	
join		hope	
stand		prepare	
follow		salute	
visit		feel	
describe		sell	



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"My village"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. people 2. fishermen 3. villages

Verbs

1. live 2. catch 3. work

Others

1. early 2. every day 3. almost

2 Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. I live in a village in Damietta.

2. Some people here catch fish early in the morning.

3. Other villagers work in fish factories.

4. We all enjoy the cool sea breeze.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

I'm Salma. I live in a village in Damietta. Some people here catch fish early in the morning. They are fishermen. Other villagers work in fish factories. We eat fish almost every day. My mom makes the best fish. We all enjoy the cool sea breeze. I love my village.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"My school day"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences

1. 2.
3. 4.

Your paragraph فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

A day in Egypt

A day in Egypt is fun. People can visit old streets and markets. They can buy bags, lamps, and other things. They watch people making bread and furniture. They visit a museum to see old things. At night, they see big, old buildings and take many nice photos.



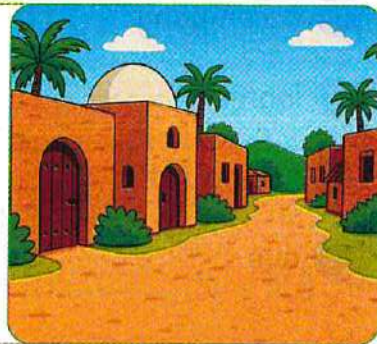
Ras Mohamed National Park

Ras Mohamed National Park is in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It has coral reefs, fish, and clear blue sea. People visit it to swim, snorkel, and dive. The park has sea turtles, dolphins, and birds. It is a protected place. Visitors also learn about nature and Bedouin culture there.



Egyptian villages

Egyptian villages are different from each other. People in Ezbet El Borg in Damietta are fishermen. They also work in fish factories. People in Qutur in Gharbia grow fruits and vegetables. In Bashandy village in Dakhla Oasis, people spin wool and weave it on looms. They make beautiful rugs.



My school day

This is my typical day at school. I wake up early around 7:00 a.m. I have breakfast. Then, I get dressed and leave for school. School day starts at 8:00 a.m. I salute the flag and sing the national anthem. The school day ends at 3:00 p.m.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Look and complete:

انظر وأكمل:



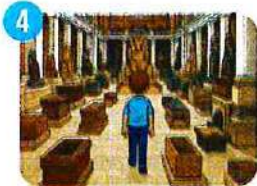
buy



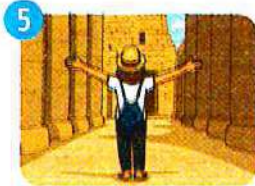
make



play



walk



visit



take

2 Match the words to their definitions:

صل الكلمات بتعريفاتها:

1 accompany

a to color cloth or wool using a special liquid

2 looms

b a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish

3 fishing net

c to go somewhere with another person

4 dye

d machines for making cloth or carpets

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

1 My uncle (travel) to a different country every year.

2 (Does) Basil and Nader go to work by car?

3 She (don't) study in the afternoon.

4 How (do) Omar get ready for the exam?

Test on unit (1)

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hana wakes up every day.

- a. early b. late c. excited d. hungry

2. Hana's mom prepares

- a. snack b. lunch c. breakfast d. dinner

3. Hana's dad grows and vegetables.

- a. beans b. cotton c. rice d. apples

4. At, we eat lunch together.

- a. morning b. night c. noon d. evening

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ras Mohamed is a/an area, so people must take care of it.

- a. protected b. scary c. awful d. dangerous

2. We saw buildings in Old Cairo. They are very old.

- a. new b. modern c. ancient d. clear

3. This puzzle is, but I will try to solve it.

- a. tricky b. tired c. early d. happy

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****typical – computer – dressed – salute**

My name is Frank. I live in America. My ⁽¹⁾ school day starts at 8:00 a.m. I have breakfast with my family. I eat bread and cheese. I get ⁽²⁾ and walk to school with my friends. I go to my classroom and begin my lessons. At around 12:30, we have the lunch break. Then, we have more lessons like ⁽³⁾ and English. The school day ends at 3:00 p.m.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

People in Beni Suef start their day early. They clean the house and prepare breakfast. Many of them work on farms, growing cotton, beans, and vegetables. Farming is an important part of life in the area. Some people work in factories where they make cement and clothes. At noon, families gather to eat lunch together. They enjoy rice, bread, and fresh vegetables. Daily life in Beni Suef is simple but full of hard work and strong family bonds. Everyone helps in their own way to support their families—in the fields, the factories, or at home.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about people in
a. Port Said **b.** Alexandria **c.** Damietta **d.** Beni Suef
2. At noon, families gather to eat together.
a. dinner **b.** lunch **c.** breakfast **d.** snack

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What do people in Beni Suef grow on farms?
.....

4. Where do some people work to make cement and clothes?
.....

5. What do families eat for lunch in Beni Suef?
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. visitors – In – about – nature. – learn – the park,

2. salute – We – sing – and – the flag – national anthem. – the

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Where (does) you live in Egypt?

2. She (play) the drums on Fridays.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. you can see sea turtles dolphins, and many types of birds.

2. what about your school day

8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

Your name is Amr and your email address is (amr@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Ahmed and his email address is (ahmed@yahoo.com).

“Your village”

(people – work)

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

nets – villages – Lake – family – fisherman

Mr. Hani: Good morning! Let's talk about life in different ⁽¹⁾..... in Egypt.

Amina : I'm from Ezbet El Borg. My father is a ⁽²⁾.....

Mr. Hani: What about you, Omar? Where are you from?

Omar : I live in Shakhoulouba, near ⁽³⁾..... Manzala.

Mr. Hani: Do you help your ⁽⁴⁾.....?

Omar : Yes, I help my uncle clean fishing ⁽⁵⁾.....

2 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. sea turtles – dolphins – fish – furniture (.....)
2. tricky – famous – books – tired (.....)
3. drove – felt – try – sang (.....)
4. boat – wool – rug – carpet (.....)
5. Damietta – Gharbia – Kafr El Sheikh – America (.....)

3 Reorder:

1. a famous – park. – is – Ras Mohamed – national

2. around – a.m. – wakes up – He – 9:00

3. visited – We – sites – ancient – in Cairo.

4. work – people – Some – factories. – in

5. fish. – accompany – I – to catch – my father

2 Unit

Our Nature

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Talk about how to grow a plant step by step
- Describe the weather in different places
- Identify and accurately pronounce the phonemes /e/ and /I/

- التحدث عن كيفية زراعة النبات خطوة بخطوة
- وصف الطقس في أماكن مختلفة
- تحديد الصوتيات /e/ و /I/ ونطقها بدقة

Listening

- Listen to short texts to identify the main idea
- Identify the specific details in a listening text

- الاستماع إلى النصوص القصيرة لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية
- تحديد التفاصيل المعينة في نص الاستماع

Reading

- Answer comprehension questions about plants, weather, and animal habitats in Egypt
- Identify main ideas in a text
- Identify supporting details

- الإجابة عن أسئلة الفهم حول النباتات والطقس ومواطن الحيوانات في مصر
- تحديد الأفكار الرئيسية في النص
- تحديد التفاصيل الداعمة

Writing

- Write sentences using the present continuous tense
- Write a short story about an experience or trip

- كتابة الجمل باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر
- كتابة قصة قصيرة عن تجربة أو رحلة ما

Lesson

1

Caring For Plants



Play Audio

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:

Main Vocabulary

مفردات أساسية



natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



weeds

حشائش/أعشاب ضارة



hibiscus

كرّكديه



basil

ريحان



plant

يزرع



water

يروي/يسقي



pull out

يزيل/يسحب

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

sunlight	ضوء الشمس	mint	نعناع	guava	جوافه
care	رعاية	parsley	بقدونس	fig	تين
kinds	أنواع	dishes	أطباق	fruit	فاكهة/ثمرة
herbs	أعشاب	flavor	نكهة	olive	زيتون
insects	حشرات	jasmine	الياسمين	oil	زيت
garden	حديقة	drink	مشروب	health	صحة

Adjectives الصفات

incredible	رائع/لا يُصدق	amazing	مدهش/رائع	sweet	حلو
healthy	صحي/سليم	tasty	لذيذ	hard	صعب/شاق



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
water يروي/يسقي	watered	keep يُقي/يحافظ على	kept
add يضيف	added	grow يزرع/ينمو	grew
relax يسترخي	relaxed	drink يشرب	drank
taste له مذاق	tasted	make يصنع	made
check يفحص	checked	have يمتلك/لديه	had

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

take care of يعتني بـ	Over there هناك
full of مملوء بـ	It sounds like يبدو كأنه
That's cool! هذا رائع!	take time يأخذ وقتًا

Tip!

- Listen carefully for main ideas and important details to understand the text and answer questions correctly.

• استمع بعناية إلى الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل المهمة لفهم النص والإجابة عن الأسئلة بشكل صحيح.



(Conversation) main points

النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة



- Laila likes her grandpa's garden and asks how he keeps it green.
لبنى تحب حديقة جدها وتساءله كيف يجعلها خضراء دائماً.
- Grandpa says plants need water, sunlight, and care.
يقول الجد إن النباتات تحتاج الماء وضوء الشمس والرعاية.
- He grows herbs like basil, mint, and parsley. He also grows hibiscus and jasmine.
يزرع الجد الأعشاب مثل الريحان والنعناع والبقدونس. كما يزرع الكركديه والياسمين.
- These herbs are used in many Egyptian dishes. Some add flavor, and others are good for health.
تُستخدم هذه الأعشاب في العديد من الأطباق المصرية. بعضها يضيف نكهة، والبعض الآخر مفيد للصحة.
- Grandpa has guava, fig, and olive trees.
لدى الجد أشجار جوافة وتين وزيتون.
- Egyptians grew olive trees many years ago.
المصريون زرعوا أشجار الزيتون منذ سنين طويلة.
- Grandpa waters plants in the morning, removes weeds, and checks for insects.
الجد يسقي النباتات صباحاً، يزيل الحشائش، ويتفقد الحشرات.

Conversation



Listen, look, and read:

S B page 22

استمع، انظر واقرأ:



Laila and her grandpa are talking about the plants in his garden.

ليلي وجَدُّها يتحدثان عن النباتات الموجودة في حديقته.



Laila

1 Grandpa, your garden looks incredible! How do you keep it so green and healthy?
جَدِّي، حديقتك تبدو رائعة! كيف تحافظ على خضرتها وسلامتها؟

2 Thank you, Laila. I take care of it every day. Plants need water, sunlight, and care to grow well.

شكراً لك يا ليلي. أنا أعتني بها كل يوم. تحتاج النباتات إلى الماء وضوء الشمس والعناية لتنمو بشكل جيد.



Grandpa



3 What kinds of plants do you have here?
ما أنواع النباتات التي لديك هنا؟

4 I grow herbs like basil, mint, and parsley. We use them in many Egyptian dishes. Some add flavor, and others are good for health.

أزرع الأعشاب مثل الريحان والنعناع والبقدونس. نستخدمها في العديد من الأطباق المصرية. بعضها يضيف نكهة، وبعضها الآخر مفيد للصحة.



5 Oh, Dad drinks mint tea every evening on the balcony. It helps him relax.
يشرب أبي الشاي بالنعناع كل مساء في الشرفة. فهو يساعده على الاسترخاء.

6 Yes, it tastes good. I also grow hibiscus and jasmine. They smell lovely, and we use hibiscus to make a tasty drink.

نعم، طعمه جيد. كما أنني أزرع الكركديه والياسمين. فرائحتهما جميلة، ونستخدم الكركديه لصنع مشروب لذيذ.



7 Mom makes hibiscus tea all the time! And jasmine smells amazing at night.
تصنع أمي شايًا بالكركديه طوال الوقت! ورائحة الياسمين رائعة في الليل.



I have guava and fig trees, too. Their fruit is sweet and healthy.

8 Over there are the olive trees.

لدي أشجار جوافة وتين أيضًا. فاكهتها حلوة وصحية. وهناك أشجار الزيتون.



9

Wow! Do Egyptians really grow olives?

واو! هل يزرع المصريون الزيتون حقًا؟



Yes. Olives take time to grow, but they are full of oil. People grew olive trees in Egypt many years ago—and they still do.

10 نعم. يستغرق الزيتون وقتًا طويلًا لينمو، لكنه مملوء بالزيت. كان الناس يزرعون أشجار الزيتون في مصر منذ سنوات عديدة - وما زالوا يفعلون ذلك.



11

That's cool! How do you care for all these plants?

هذا رائع! كيف تعتني بكل هذه النباتات؟



I water them early in the morning, pull out weeds, and check for insects. Sometimes I use natural fertilizer.

12 أقوم بسقيها في الصباح الباكر وأزيل الأعشاب الضارة وأتفقد الحشرات. وأحيانًا أستخدم سمادًا طبيعيًا.



13

It sounds like hard work.

يبدو كأنه عمل شاق.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

1 Mint, basil, and parsley are herbs.

()

2 Laila's dad drinks hibiscus tea on the balcony.

()

3 Olives take time to grow, but they aren't full of oil.

()

3. (X)

2. (X)

1. (✓)

Answers:



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Laila's grandpa grows herbs like mint and
 a. basil b. parsley c. mangoes d. hibiscus
- 2 He uses natural to help the plants grow.
 a. tools b. paint c. fertilizer d. water bottles
- 3 Egyptians grew trees many years ago.
 a. olive b. banana c. flower d. rice
- 4 Laila asked to help in the garden
 a. every day b. next weekend c. next year d. in winter

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Salma wanted to flowers in her garden to make it look beautiful.
 a. pick b. look c. plant d. give
- 2 The farmer pulled out the because they stopped the crops from growing.
 a. grass b. flowers c. seeds d. weeds
- 3 The view from the top of the mountain was I really loved it!
 a. ugly b. normal c. incredible d. usual
- 4 Plants need water and to grow.
 a. sunlight b. milk c. sugar d. paint
- 5 smells really nice when it's fresh.
 a. Fertilizer b. Stone c. Basil d. Sugar
- 6 They dry the to make perfumes.
 a. chips b. weeds c. jasmine d. meat
- 7 This soup has a rich flavor because of the fresh
 a. water b. herbs c. weeds d. color
- 8 I always have a cold with my lunch.
 a. insect b. care c. health d. drink

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

fertilizer – plant – pull out – insects

My family loves growing plants. Every weekend, we work together in the garden. First, we ⁽¹⁾ the weeds so they don't harm the plants. Then, we use natural ⁽²⁾ to help the plants grow better. We also check the leaves to make sure there are no harmful ⁽³⁾ After a few weeks, we enjoy picking fresh fruit, like figs and grapes.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جُملاً:

1 water – Plants – and sunlight – to – well. – need – grow

2 trees – olive – ago. – People – years – grew – many

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 how do you care for all these plants

2 Sometimes i use natural fertilizer

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

"Your garden"

- What kinds of herbs do you grow?
- How do you take care of the plants?

Lesson

2

How's The Weather in Your City?

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Read and notice:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

weather	الطقس	outdoors	في الخارج	streets	شوارع
shops	محلات	shade	ظل	students	طلاب
waves	الأمواج	sunglasses	نظارة شمس	clouds	السحاب
sky	سما	hats	قبعات	farmers	مزارعون

Adjectives الصفات

different	مختلف	wet	مبلل	high	عال
rainy	ممطر	warm	دافئ	cold	بارد
dark	داكن	clear	صاف	windy	عاصف
sunny	مشمس	hot	حار	strong	قوي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
want يريد	wanted	tell يخبر	told
play يلعب	played	see يرى	saw
close يغل	closed	fly يطير	flew
walk يمشي	walked	wear يرتدي	wore
protect يحمي	protected	sit يجلس	sat

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

write back	يرد على رسالة	stay indoors	يبقى بالداخل
------------	---------------	--------------	--------------



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

New Message

From : youssef@gmail.com

To : john@yahoo.com

Subject : Weather in Egypt

Hi John,

مرحبًا يا جون،

How are you? I want to tell you about the weather in Egypt today. It is very different from one place to another.

كيف حالك؟ أريد أن أخبرك عن حالة الطقس في مصر اليوم. إن حالة الطقس مختلفة جدًا من مكان لآخر.



In Alexandria, it's windy and rainy. The sky is full of dark clouds and the waves are high. People are staying indoors because it's cold and the streets are wet. Some shops are closing early.

في الإسكندرية، الطقس عاصف وممطر. السماء مملوءة بالغيوم الداكنة والأمواج عالية. الناس يبقون في منازلهم لأن الجو بارد والشوارع مبللة. بعض المحلات تغلق أبوابها مبكرًا.

In Cairo, the weather is warm and sunny. People are walking in the streets. Children are playing in the parks. Some students are doing their homework outdoors. I can see birds flying in the clear sky.

في القاهرة، الطقس دافئ ومشمس. الناس يمشون في الشوارع. الأطفال يلعبون في الحدائق. بعض الطلاب يؤدون واجباتهم في الخارج. أستطيع أن أرى الطيور تطير في السماء الصافية.

In Aswan, it is hot. The sun is very strong, and the sky is clear. Farmers water their plants early in the morning. People drink lots of water, wear hats and sunglasses, and sit in the shade to protect themselves from the sun.

في أسوان، الطقس حار. الشمس قوية جدًا، والسماء صافية. المزارعون يروون نباتاتهم في الصباح الباكر. الناس يشربون الكثير من الماء، ويرتدون القبعات والنظارات الشمسية، ويجلسون في الظل لحماية أنفسهم من الشمس.

Now, Egyptians are checking the weather to help people take care of their homes and plants.

الآن، يتابع المصريون أحوال الطقس لمساعدة الناس في العناية بمنازلهم ونباتاتهم.

What is the weather like in your city? Write back soon.

كيف حال الطقس في مدينتك؟ اكتب لي الرد قريبًا.

Your friend,

صديقك،

Youssef

يوسف



Send

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 It's in Cairo today. The sun is strong.
a. sunny b. cold c. windy d. rainy
- 2 The are so high that my children can't swim safely.
a. clouds b. trees c. waves d. mountains
- 3 People sit in the to protect themselves from the sun.
a. cloud b. weather c. sky d. shade
- 4 It was so outside that we couldn't go to the park.
a. quiet b. windy c. clear d. calm

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

indoors – wet – warm – outdoors

The weather is different in many parts of Egypt today. In Alexandria, the streets are ⁽¹⁾, and people are staying ⁽²⁾ because of the cold wind and rain. In Cairo, the weather is ⁽³⁾ and sunny. Children are playing in the parks, and some students are studying outside. In Aswan, it's very hot, so people are wearing hats to protect themselves from the sun.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- what is the weather like in your city

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 How is the weather in Alexandria different from the weather in Cairo today?
- 2 What do people in Aswan do to stay safe in the hot weather?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the present continuous to talk about actions happening now.
- نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن أفعال تحدث الآن.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Negative النفي

Question الاستفهام

I Affirmative الإثبات ✓

I

am ('m)

He, She, It, Singular noun (اسم مفرد)

is ('s)

You, We, They, Plural noun (اسم جمع)

are ('re)

+ verb + -ing ...

Ex: – We **are** visiting Grandma.



– Ahmed **is** playing football now.



Spelling Rules قواعد التهجئة

- If a verb ends in (-e), we delete the (-e) and add (-ing).
- إذا انتهى فعل بحرف (-e)، فإننا نحذف الحرف ونضيف (-ing).
- If a verb ends in (a vowel + a consonant), we double the consonant before we add (-ing).
- إذا انتهى فعل بـ (حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن)، نضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل أن نضيف (-ing).

Ex: – make → making

Ex: – swim → swimming



2 Negative النفي X

I	→	am	} → not (n't) + verb + -ing ...
He, She, It, Singular noun	→	is	
You, We, They, Plural noun	→	are	

Ex: – They **are not** playing in the garden.



3 Question الاستفهام ?

Yes/No question السؤال بـ (هل)

Am	→	I	} → + verb + -ing ...?
Is	→	he, she, it, singular noun	
Are	→	you, we, they, plural noun	

Ex: Are you watching TV now?

– Yes, I **am**.

– No, I'm **not**.



Wh-question السؤال بأداة الاستفهام

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام)	am	→	I	} → + verb + -ing ...?
	+ is	→	he, she, it, singular noun	
	+ are	→	you, we, they, plural noun	

Ex: – What **is** he doing now?

He **is** eating lunch.



Key words الكلمات الدالة

• now/right now

• Look!

• at the moment (في هذه اللحظة (الوقت الحالي) الآن

• Listen! انظروا

استمعوا

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 She a new movie in the living room now.
a. watch b. watches c. is watching d. watched
- 2 We dinner with our cousins at the moment, so we can't answer the phone.
a. are having b. have c. had d. has
- 3 Amira doing her homework now because she is too tired.
a. am not b. aren't c. isn't d. weren't
- 4 they playing football in the park now?
a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Are
- 5 My parents are in the garden at the moment.
a. sit b. sat c. sits d. sitting
- 6 I am listening to my favorite music
a. yesterday b. every day c. last week d. now
- 7 Why Fares crying in his room?
a. does b. is c. do d. are
- 8 What is studying now?
a. I b. she c. they d. we

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 Look! The children (am) playing in the garden.
- 2 My sister (aren't) cooking lunch now.
- 3 (Be) you watching a movie at the moment?
- 4 They are (study) for their English test now.
- 5 I am (not eat) lunch because I'm not hungry.
- 6 It is (rained) heavily at the moment.
- 7 Adam and Youssef are (draw) pictures.
- 8 He's (writes) an email to his friend now.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The weather in Egypt is different in each city today. In Alexandria, it's rainy and windy, so people are staying indoors, and shops are closing early. The streets are wet, so cars are moving slowly. In Cairo, the weather is warm and sunny. People are walking and sitting in gardens. Students are doing homework outside. In Aswan, the weather is very hot. Farmers water plants early, and people rest in the shade. Many wear hats and sunglasses to stay safe from the strong sun. Each city has its own weather. That's why people are doing different activities in each city.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 In Alexandria, shops are early.
 a. closing b. opening c. cleaning d. moving
- 2 People in Aswan wear to protect their eyes from the sun.
 a. boots b. jackets c. sunglasses d. gloves

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 What is the weather like in Cairo?

- 4 Why are people doing different activities in each city?

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 My dad is (fix) the car in the garage right now.
- 2 (Am) the cleaner cleaning the classroom at the moment?

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



kingfisher

طائر الرفراف



crocodile

تمساح



tilapia

سمك بلطي

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Nile perch	سمك البياض النيلي	herons	طيور البلهشون	soil	تربة
wheat	قمح	boats	قوارب	temples	معابد
south	الجنوب	north	الشمال	desert	الصحراء
world	عالم	life	حياة	country	بلد/دولة
kilometers	كيلومترات	river	نهر	The Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء

Adjectives الصفات

good	جيد	dangerous	خطير	special	مميز
the longest	الأطول	big	كبير	important	مهم/هام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
live يعيش	lived	swim يسبح	swam
flood يفيض	flooded	come يأتي	came
provide يمد/يزود	provided	find يجد	found
travel يتنقل/يسافر	traveled	build يبني	built
flow يتدفق/يجري	flowed	bring يجلب/يُحضّر	brought



Important expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

In the past,

في الماضي،

depend on

يعتمد على

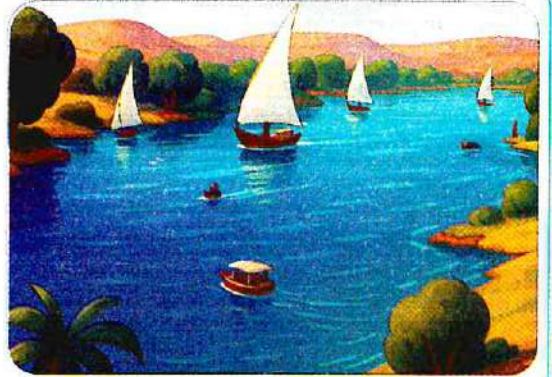


Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,650 kilometers long. The Nile flows through Egypt from south to north. It goes through the desert and brings life to the country.

نهر النيل هو أطول نهر في العالم. يبلغ طوله حوالي 6,650 كيلومتراً. يجري النيل في مصر من الجنوب إلى الشمال. يمر عبر الصحراء ويجلب الحياة للبلاد.



Many animals live in and near the Nile. Big fish like Nile perch and tilapia swim in the water. Crocodiles live in the river too. They are dangerous animals. Many birds come to the river to drink and find food. You can see kingfishers, herons, and ducks near the Nile.

تعيش العديد من الحيوانات في نهر النيل والقرب منه. تسبح في مياهه أسماك كبيرة مثل سمك البياض النيلي والبلطي. وتعيش التماسيح في النهر أيضاً، وهي حيوانات خطيرة. تأتي العديد من الطيور إلى النهر لشرب وتجد الطعام. يمكنك رؤية طيور الرقراق وطيور البلشون والبط بالقرب من النيل.

The Nile is very important for Egyptian people. In the past, the river flooded and brought good soil. Farmers used this soil to grow food like wheat and vegetables. The Nile provides people and animals with water to drink. People also use the river to travel in boats.

نهر النيل مهم جداً للشعب المصري. في الماضي، كان النهر يفيض ويجلب التربة الخصبة. كان المزارعون يستخدمون هذه التربة لزراعة الطعام مثل القمح والخضراوات. يوفر النيل ماء الشرب للناس والحيوانات. كما يستخدم الناس النهر للسفر بالقوارب.

The Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was special. They built temples near the river. Today, many people still depend on the Nile for their jobs and food.

كان المصريون القدماء يعتقدون أن نهر النيل مميز. لقد بنوا المعابد بالقرب منه. واليوم، لا يزال الكثير من الناس يعتمدون على نهر النيل في وظائفهم وطعامهم.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 In the past, the Nile and brought good soil.
 a. swam b. built c. found d. flooded
- 2 have two long thin legs.
 a. Crocodiles b. Flies c. Fish d. Herons
- 3 Almost all people on the internet in their work now.
 a. depend b. come c. live d. get
- 4 There are dangerous animals living in the Nile River, like
 a. crocodiles b. herons c. tilapia d. ducks

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

tilapia – flows – north – wheat

The Nile River brings life to Egypt. It ⁽¹⁾ from the south to the ⁽²⁾ It goes through the dry land bringing rich soil and helps plants grow. Many animals and birds live in and near the Nile, like ⁽³⁾, herons, ducks, and kingfishers. People use boats to travel through the Nile. The river is important; it provides food, jobs, and clean water for everyone.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- The Nile is the longest river in the world
-

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 Which fish live in the Nile?
-

- 2 Why do you think Egyptians depend on the Nile for food?
-

B Pronunciation

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



- Pronounce the /e/ sound by opening your mouth slightly and keeping your tongue low-mid and front. This vowel sound is heard in words like "ten" /ten/, "hen" /hen/, and "bed" /bed/.

• انطق صوت /e/ بفتح فمك قليلاً مع إبقاء لسانك منخفضاً في الوسط وفي الأمام. يُسمع هذا الصوت المتحرك في كلمات مثل "ten" /ten/، "hen" /hen/ و "bed" /bed/.

e / e/



desk

مكتب



net

شبكة



shelf

رف

- Pronounce the short /I/ sound. Keep your tongue high but slightly lower than for /i:/, with relaxed lips and jaw. The tongue tip rests just behind the bottom front teeth like in the words (sit, bit, in).

• انطق صوت /I/ أبقِ لسانك مرتفعاً لكن منخفضاً قليلاً عن صوت /i:/ مع استرخاء الشفتين والفك. يستقر طرف اللسان خلف الأسنان الأمامية السفلية مباشرةً كما في كلمات (sit, bit, in).

i / I/



pin

دبوس



gift

هدية



pick

يلتقط



hill

تل

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

/e/ sound

fence	سور	insects	حشرات
red	أحمر	bed	سرير
clever	ماهر		

/I/ sound

swim	يسبح	insects	حشرات
mint	نعناع	window	نافذة/شباك
milk	لبن/حليب	village	قرية

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is about 6,650 kilometers long. The Nile is home to many animals. Many fish live in the river, like Nile perch and tilapia. These fish are important for food. Birds also come to the river. You can see kingfishers flying near the water and herons standing still, looking for fish to hunt and eat. The Nile provides people with water, fish, and good soil to grow food. Boats travel on the river every day. It is a gift that helps life grow in Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The fly near the Nile looking for fish to eat.

- a. kingfishers b. owls c. flies d. lizards

2 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the

- a. soil b. Nile c. fish d. food

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

3 How long is the Nile River?

.....

4 What does the Nile provide people with to live?

.....

5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 special. – thought – The Ancient – was – the Nile – Egyptians

.....

2 Egyptian – The Nile – important – people. – is – for

.....

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



waterfall

شلال



fossils

حفريات



skeleton

هيكل عظمي



lake

بحيرة



Wadi El-Hitan

وادي الحيتان

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Wadi El Rayan	وادي الريان	National Park	محمية	early	مبكراً
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	guide	مرشد	history	التاريخ
thankfully	لحسن الحظ	palm trees	أشجار النخيل/نخل	scientists	علماء
museum	متحف	fun	مرح	sand	رمل
area	منطقة	bones	عظام	exhibit	معرض
farms	مزارع	bench	مقعد	fossil museum	متحف للحفريات
Fayoum	الفيوم	farms	مزارع	whale	حوت
nature	طبيعة	lunch	وجبة الغداء	camera	كاميرا
everywhere	كل مكان	class teacher	معلم الفصل	Valley of the Whales	وادي الحيتان

Adjectives الصفات

kind	عطوف/لطيف	rare	نادر	real	حقيقي
ancient	قديم/عتيق	wooden	خشبي	beautiful	جميل

**Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
arrive يصل	arrived	leave يغادر	left
explain يشرح	explained	show يعرض	showed
protect يحمي	protected	find يجد	found
realize يدرك	realized		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

take a picture of يلتقط صورة لـ	On the way, في الطريق,
for two hours لمدة ساعتين	rode the bus ركب الحافلة
in the distance في الأفق	into the desert في الصحراء
took a short trip قام برحلة قصيرة	with no luck دون جدوى / دون فائدة
covered by sea مُغطى بالبحر	organized a trip نظم رحلة
tucked under موضوع تحت	not only ..., but also ... ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضًا ...
just before مباشرة قبل	full of مملوء بـ

Tip!

- **Skimming** a text means reading quickly to get the main idea. Focus on the most important parts to understand what the text is mostly about.

• تصفح النص سريعًا تعني قراءة سريعة لفهم الفكرة الرئيسية. ركّز على الأجزاء الأكثر أهمية لفهم محتوى النص.

 Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Last Thursday, our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum. Our class teacher, Miss Salma, and science teacher, Mr. Ahmed, came with us. We left school early and rode the bus for two hours.



نظمت مدرستنا الخميس الماضي رحلة إلى حديقة وادي الريان الوطنية بالفيوم. رافقتنا معلمة الصف، الأستاذة سلمى، ومعلم العلوم، الأستاذ أحمد. غادرتنا المدرسة مبكرًا وركبنا الحافلة لمدة ساعتين.

On the way, we saw green farms, sand dunes, and camels walking in the distance. When we arrived, a kind guide named Mr. Tarek showed us the lakes, the waterfalls, and the palm trees. He explained that Wadi El Rayan is not only beautiful, but it also protects rare animals and plants.

في الطريق، رأينا مزارع خضراء، وكتباتًا رملية، وجمالًا تمشي في الأفق. وعندما وصلنا، أَرانا مرشد لطيف يُدعى السيد طارق البحيرات والشلالات وأشجار النخيل. وشرح لنا أن وادي الريان ليس جميلًا فحسب، بل إنه يحمي أيضًا حيوانات ونباتات نادرة.

After lunch, we took another short trip into the desert—to a place called Wadi El-Hitan, or Valley of the Whales. This place was covered by sea. Scientists found the skeletons of ancient whales there. We saw real whale bones in the sand and even a fossil museum!

بعد الغداء، قمنا برحلة قصيرة أخرى إلى الصحراء - إلى مكان يُدعى وادي الحيتان. كان هذا المكان مُغطى بالبحر. عثر العلماء هناك على هياكل عظمية لحيتان قديمة. رأينا عظام حيتان حقيقية في الرمال، بل وحتى متحفًا للحفريات!

I wanted to take a picture of the skeletons with my camera when I realized that it wasn't with me. I looked everywhere with no luck. Thankfully, Mr. Ahmed found it tucked under a wooden bench outside the exhibit just before we left that area.

أردت التقاط صورة للهياكل العظمية بكاميرتي عندما أدركت أنها ليست معي. بحثت في كل مكان ولم يحالفني الحظ. لحسن الحظ، وجدها السيد أحمد موضوعة تحت مقعد خشبي خارج المعرض قبل مغادرتنا تلك المنطقة.

That trip was full of nature, history, and fun with friends.

كانت تلك الرحلة مملوءة بالطبيعة والتاريخ والمرح مع الأصدقاء.



Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات التالية:

Steps of writing a story

خطوات كتابة قصة



- 1 Tell when and where the story takes place. اذكر متى وأين تدور أحداث القصة.
Ex: Last Thursday, our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum.
- 2 Say who is in the story (people, animals, etc.). اذكر الشخصيات في القصة (أشخاص، حيوانات، إلخ).
Ex: Our class teacher, Miss Salma, and science teacher, Mr. Ahmed, came with us.
- 3 Write what happens using (first, next, and finally). اكتب ما يحدث باستخدام (أولاً، تالياً، وأخيراً).
- 4 Find information about the place to include in your writing. ابحث عن معلومات حول المكان لتضمينها في كتابتك.
- 5 Include a problem and a solution. قم بتضمين مشكلة وحل.
- 6 Use past simple tense. استخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.
Ex: We saw real whale bones.
- 7 Use a friendly style when writing. استخدم أسلوباً ودوداً عند الكتابة.
- 8 Add interesting details to make your story exciting. أضف تفاصيل شيقة لجعل قصتك مشوقة.
- 9 Finish with an ending that wraps up your story. اختتم بنهاية تلخص قصتك.
Ex: That trip was full of nature, history, and fun with friends.
- 10 Check your writing for any spelling, grammar, and punctuation mistakes. تحقق من كتابتك بحثاً عن أي أخطاء إملائية أو نحوية أو علامات ترقيم.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 The school organized a trip to Family Park. ()
- 2 The camels were walking in the distance on the way. ()
- 3 Mr. Ahmed found the camera on a wooden bench. ()
- 4 The trip was full of fun and history. ()

4. (✓)

3. (X)

2. (✓)

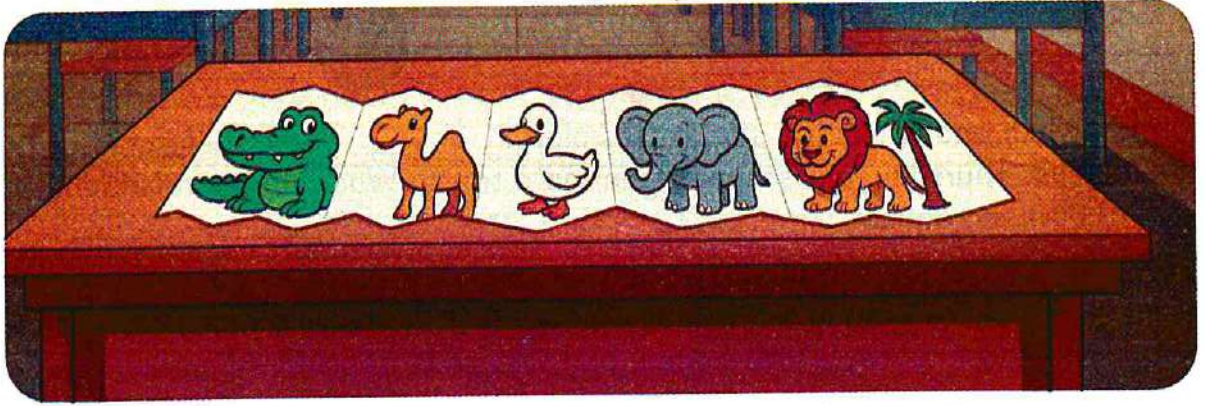
1. (X)

Answers:



Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



Steps of making an Egyptian wildlife snapshot



خطوات عمل لقطة للحياة البرية في مصر



1 Choose one animal (like a camel, Nile crocodile).

اختر حيوانًا واحدًا (مثل الجمل أو تمساح النيل).

2 Find or draw a picture: You can draw the animal or plant, print a photo, or cut out one from a magazine.

ابحث عن صورة أو ارسمها: يمكنك رسم الحيوان أو النبات، أو طباعة صورة، أو قص واحدة من مجلة.



Write 3 easy facts:

اكتب ثلاث حقائق سهلة:

– Where does it live? (Desert, sea, river, etc.)

أين يعيش؟ (صحراء، بحر، نهر، إلخ.)

3 – What's the weather like there? (Hot, dry, sunny, etc.)

ما حالة الطقس هناك؟ (حار، جاف، مشمس، إلخ.)

– What's one special thing about it? What does it eat? Is it dangerous or not?

ما الشيء الذي يميزه؟ ماذا يأكل؟ هل هو خطير أم لا؟



4 Make your card and color it.

اصنع بطاقتك ولونها.



5 Share with the class.

شاركها مع الصف.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I always take pictures with my
a. camera b. lunch c. exhibit d. waterfall
- 2 I looked for my book with no I couldn't find it.
a. skeleton b. museum c. desert d. luck
- 3 They found the map in the bag.
a. made b. realized c. tucked d. played
- 4 This bird is very We don't find it often.
a. wooden b. rare c. hard d. kind

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

fossil – whales – distance – skeletons

I went with my family on a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park. We saw many animals there. On the way, we saw camels walking in the ⁽¹⁾ We also visited a ⁽²⁾ museum. The guide explained that the park protects rare animals and plants. At Wadi El-Hitan, we saw whale ⁽³⁾ in the sand. Scientists found them there.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 bones – in – We – the sand. – whale – saw

2 We – trip – the desert. – took – a short – into

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- Salma went to Wadi El rayan National Park

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

"A story about your last trip"

- Where did you go?
- Who went with you?

Unit 2

Review

Vocabulary

natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي	weeds	حشائش/أعشاب ضارة	hibiscus	كركديه
basil	ريحان	plant	يزرع	water	يروي
pull out	يزيل/يسحب	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	parsley	بقدونس
flavor	نكهة	incredible	رائع/لا يصدق	sunny	مشمس
weather	الطقس	shelf	رف	waves	أمواج
drink	مشروب	clear	صافٍ	windy	عاصف
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	Nile perch	سمك البياض النيلي	rainy	ممطر
tilapia	سمك بلطي	soil	تربة	waterfall	شلال
wheat	قمح	temples	معابد	fossils	حفريات
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	lake	بحيرة	sand dunes	كثبان رملية
guide	مرشد	history	التاريخ	kinds	أنواع
herons	طيور البلشون	rare	نادر	olive	زيتون

Language

Present continuous tense

- We use the present continuous to talk about actions happening now.
- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الأفعال التي تحدث الآن.

Affirmative

Subject + **am/is/are** + verb + -ing ...Ex: – We **are** visiting Grandma.

Negative

Subject + **am/is/are** + **not (n't)** + verb + -ing ...Ex: – They **are not** playing in the garden.

Yes/No question

**Am/Is/Are** + subject + verb + -ing ...?Ex: **Are** you watching TV now?– Yes, I **am**. – No, I **am not**.

Wh-question

Question word + **am/is/are** + subject + verb + -ing ...?Ex: – What **is** he doing now? – He **is** drinking tea.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 Caring For Plants

- Laila likes her grandpa's garden and asks him how he keeps it green.
ليلي مُعجبة بحديقة جَدِّها وتساله كيف يُحافظ عليها خضراء.
- Grandpa says he looks after the plants every day.
يقول الجد إنه يعتني بالنباتات يوميًا.
- He plants herbs like mint, basil, and parsley. He also grows jasmine and hibiscus.
يزرع أعشابًا كالنعناع والريحان والبقدونس، كما يزرع الياسمين والكرنديه.
- Laila's dad enjoys mint tea on the balcony to relax. Her mom makes hibiscus tea all the time.
يستمتع والد ليلي بتناول الشاي بالنعناع في البلكونة للاسترخاء. ووالدتها تصنع شاي الكرنديه دائمًا.
- Grandpa has fig, guava, and olive trees.
الجد له أشجار تين، جواقة وزيتون.
- Olive trees have been planted in Egypt for many years.
أشجار الزيتون مزروعة في مصر منذ سنوات عديدة.
- In the morning, Grandpa waters the plants, pulls out weeds, and checks for insects.
في الصباح، يسقي الجد النباتات، ويزيل الأعشاب الضارة، ويتفقد الحشرات.

Lesson 2 How's The Weather in Your City?

- The weather is different in many parts of Egypt today.
الطقس مختلف في أنحاء كثيرة من مصر اليوم.
- In Alexandria, it's cold, windy, and rainy.
في الإسكندرية، الجو بارد وعاصف وممطر.
- In Cairo, it's sunny and warm, and people are doing different activities outdoors.
في القاهرة، الجو مشمس ودافئ، والناس يقومون بأنشطة مختلفة في الهواء الطلق.
- In Aswan, it's very hot and dry.
في أسوان، الجو حار وجاف جدًا.
- People in Aswan drink much water, wear hats and sunglasses, and rest in the shade to protect themselves from the sun.
الناس في أسوان يشربون الكثير من الماء، يرتدون القبعات والنظارات الشمسية، ويستريحون في الظل لحماية أنفسهم من الشمس.

Lesson 3 (A) The Wonderful Nile River

- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
نهر النيل هو الأطول في العالم.
- It flows through Egypt from the south to the north.
يجري في مصر من الجنوب إلى الشمال.
- It brought good soil to grow food in the past.
جلب تربة جيدة لزراعة الطعام في الماضي.
- Fish like Nile perch and tilapia live in the river and are important for food.
تعيش في النهر أسماك مثل سمك البياض النيلي والبلطي، وهي مهمة للغذاء.
- Birds such as kingfishers and herons come to the river to find fish.
تأتي طيور مثل الرفراف والبيجع إلى النهر للبحث عن الأسماك.
- The Nile provides water, soil, and life for many animals and people.
يوفر النيل الماء والتربة والحياة للناس والحيوانات.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

سماذ طيعي	كركيه
حشائش/أعشاب ضارة	ريحان
يزرع	يروي
يزيل/يسحب	جواقة
زيتون	حشرات
ظل	صحي/سليم

Lesson (2)

بارد	مبلل
مُشمس	السحاب
الأمواج	شوارع
صافي	عاصف
عال	نظارة شمس
داكن	الطقس

Lesson (3)

سمك البياض النيلي	الشمال
سمك بلطي	معايد
تمساح	ترية
طائر الرفراف	عالم
طيور البلشون	كيلومترات
الجنوب	خطير

Lessons (4&5)

شلال	حفريات
هيكل عظمي	بحيرة
كتبان رملية	مرشد
نادر	متحف



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
explain		tell	
want		see	
use		sit	
add		fly	
relax		arrive	
taste		come	
check		wear	
keep		bring	
grow		leave	
drink		travel	
make		close	
give		walk	
show		provide	
organize		protect	
live		flow	
swim		find	
flood		realize	



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"The weather in Egypt"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. weather 2. waves 3. clouds

Verbs

1. is 2. check 3. go

Others

1. different 2. clear 3. light

2 Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (نكلمة الجملة)

1. Today, the weather is different across Egypt.

2. Cairo is warm and sunny with light wind.

3. Aswan is very hot with a clear sky and strong sun.

4. We should always check the weather before we go out.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

Today, the weather is different across Egypt. Alexandria is cold, windy, and rainy with clouds and waves. Cairo is warm and sunny with light wind. Aswan is very hot with a clear sky and strong sun. We should always check the weather before we go out to know how we can protect ourselves.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"Life in the Nile River"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

1.

2.

Your sentences

3.

4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

Our garden

Our garden is full of life and beauty. Grandpa takes care of it every day. He waters the plants, pulls out weeds, and uses natural fertilizer. We grow herbs like mint and parsley, and flowers like hibiscus and jasmine. We grow guava, fig, and olive trees. The plants give us food and fresh air.



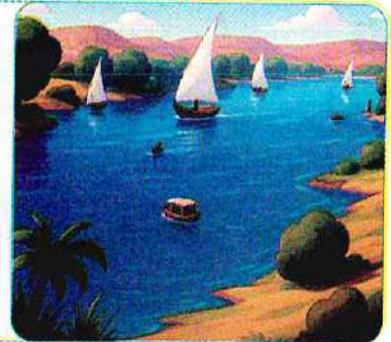
Different weather across Egypt

Today, the weather is different across Egypt. In Alexandria, it's cold and rainy, with strong winds and high waves. People are staying indoors. Cairo is sunny and warm, and families are enjoying the parks. In Aswan, it's hot and dry. So, people rest in the shade and water plants early.



The Nile River

The Nile River flows through Egypt. It brings rich soil, making people able to grow food. Fish like Nile perch and tilapia swim in the Nile. Birds such as herons and kingfishers hunt near the river. People use the Nile to travel in boats. The Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was special.



Our trip to Wadi El Rayan

Last Thursday, we visited Wadi El Rayan in Fayoum with our teachers. We saw farms, camels, lakes, and waterfalls. A guide showed us rare animals and plants. Later, we explored Wadi El-Hitan and saw whale skeletons. We saw whale bones in the sand. It was an amazing trip!





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 When it's hot, people drink water and rest in the
 a. shade b. street c. heat d. dust
- 2 The streets are because it is raining heavily.
 a. dry b. wet c. dusty d. hot
- 3 We wear hats to ourselves from the sun.
 a. heat b. clean c. grow d. protect
- 4 Some people like to check the before they go outdoors to know if it's hot or cold.
 a. shops b. beach c. plants d. weather

2 Read and write the sentences using the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 Maged (play) tennis in the club now.
- 2 you (eat) your lunch at the moment?
- 3 I (not wear) my jacket. It's hot.
- 4 My friend and I (visit) London now.

3 Look, choose, and complete using the words in the box:

انظر، اختر وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الموجودة في الصندوق:

waterfalls – ancient – celebrate – trip – history

Last Thursday, our class went on a school ⁽¹⁾ to Wadi El Rayan in Fayoum. We saw lakes, ⁽²⁾, and desert animals. Later, we visited Wadi El-Hitan, the Valley of the Whales, and saw ⁽³⁾ whale skeletons in the sand. I was surprised to know that whales once lived there! The trip was full of learning, fun, and ⁽⁴⁾



Test on unit (2)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. takes care of the garden every day.
a. Grandpa b. Grandma c. Mom d. Dad
2. Grandpa keeps the garden healthy by weeds.
a. digging b. painting c. reading d. pulling out
3. The family grows flowers, like
a. guava b. parsley c. olive d. jasmine
4. The plants give the family food and
a. joy b. games c. pets d. books

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After a long day at work, I just want to and listen to music.
a. cook b. run c. relax d. protect
2. Museums sometimes show of dinosaurs.
a. stones b. skeletons c. whales d. clothes
3. We took a to Fayoum. I really enjoyed it!
a. trip b. desert c. flower d. luck

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****waterfall – fossils – guide – rare**

We arrived at Wadi El Rayan yesterday. The ⁽¹⁾..... showed us the lakes and the palm trees. We walked near the ⁽²⁾..... and saw a white heron there. At Wadi El-Hitan, we saw the ⁽³⁾..... of an ancient whale in the sand. We also visited a museum that had a real whale skeleton.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Nile is one of the most important rivers in the world. It flows through many parts of Egypt and brings water to dry lands. Along its banks, farmers grow crops like wheat and vegetables using the rich soil. In the river, fish such as Nile perch and tilapia swim. Herons and kingfishers wait near the water to catch them. People ride boats on the river every day. The Nile gives water to drink, food to eat, and jobs for many people. Without the Nile, life in Egypt would be very hard, especially in desert areas.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Nile through many parts of Egypt.
a. walks b. flows c. looks d. comes
2. The underlined word "hard" means
a. difficult b. easy c. kind d. real

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What helps farmers grow crops along the Nile banks?

.....

4. What do people ride on the Nile?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. olive – the – Over – are – trees. – there

.....

2. built – They – near – temples – river. – the

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The teacher (explain) the lesson to the students now.

2. I (not listen) to music at the moment.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. That trip was full of nature history, and fun

.....

2. Now, egyptians are checking the weather

.....

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

8

“The weather in your city”

(wet – outdoors)

Al-Azhar Practice on unit (2)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

mint – incredible – olive – weeds – shade

Omar: Wow, Sami! Your garden looks ⁽¹⁾ !

Sami : Thanks, Omar. I take good care of it every day. I pull out the ⁽²⁾ myself.

Omar: What kind of plants do you grow here?

Sami : I grow herbs like ⁽³⁾ and some vegetables.

Omar: Is that an ⁽⁴⁾ tree near the wall?

Sami : Yes, it is. It gives us ⁽⁵⁾ in the afternoon.

2 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

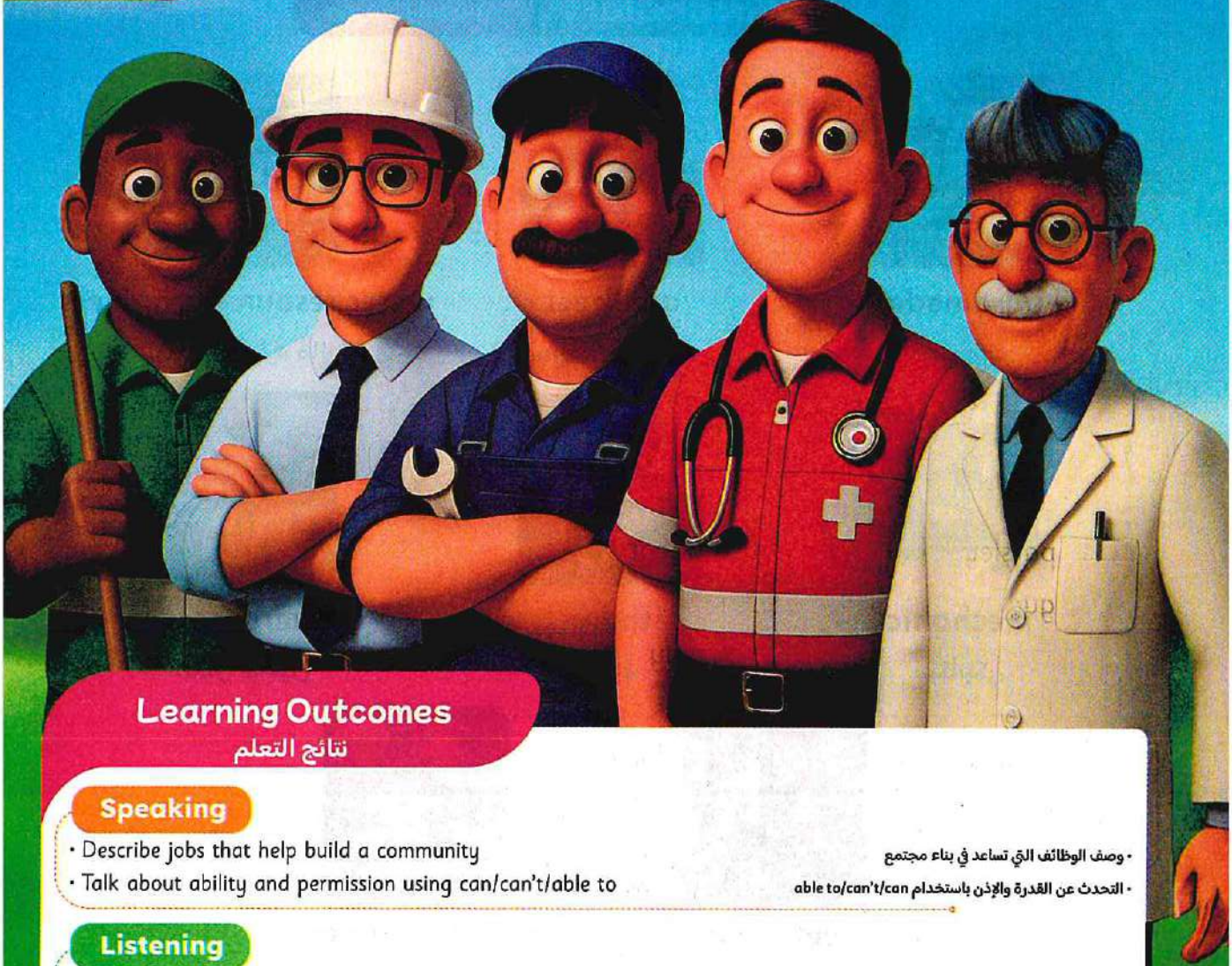
1. parsley – basil – hibiscus – meat (.....)
2. guava – fig – olive – camel (.....)
3. sunny – shade – rainy – windy (.....)
4. fox – heron – whale – carrot (.....)
5. skeletons – fossils – books – dunes (.....)

3 Reorder

1. near – The – the rivers. – herons – live
.....
2. the – high – Waves – are – beach. – on
.....
3. care – Grandpa – our garden. – takes – of
.....
4. drinks – mint tea – evening. – Dad – every
.....
5. air. – give – Plants – fresh – us
.....

3 Unit

Community Builders



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Describe jobs that help build a community
- Talk about ability and permission using can/can't/able to

• وصف الوظائف التي تساعد في بناء مجتمع
• التحدث عن القدرة والإذن باستخدام able to/can't/can

Listening

- Identify features of different jobs needed in the community
- Follow conversations about helping the community
- Recognize two and three syllable words with long sounds

• التعرف على خصائص الوظائف المختلفة المطلوبة في المجتمع
• متابعة محادثات حول مساعدة المجتمع
• التعرف على الكلمات ذات المقطعين والثلاثة مقاطع صوتية ذات الأصوات الطويلة

Reading

- Identify key vocabulary in reading texts
- Identify the moral and characters of a fictional story
- Recognize elements and specific details in a biography

• التعرف على المفردات الأساسية في نصوص قراءة
• التعرف على العبرة والشخصيات في قصة خيالية
• إدراك عناصر وتفاصيل محددة في سيرة ذاتية

Writing

- Write a biography of a famous Egyptian person
- Create a poster identifying and solving a community problem

• كتابة سيرة ذاتية لشخص مصري مشهور
• إنشاء ملصق يحدد مشكلة مجتمعية ويحلها

Lesson 1

Jobs That Help The Community

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Main Vocabulary

مفردات أساسية



paramedic

مسعف



architect

مهندسة معمارية



water resources engineer

مهندس موارد مائية



mechanic

ميكانيكي



tailor

خياط



delivery person

عامل توصيل



street cleaner

عامل نظافة الشارع



traffic officer

ضابط مرور

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

jobs	وظائف	homes	منازل	road	طريق
city	مدينة	schools	مدارس	streets	شوارع

Adjectives الصفات

important	مهم/هام	beautiful	جميل	clean	نظيف
-----------	---------	-----------	------	-------	------

**Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
clean ينظف	cleaned	keep يُبقي/يحافظ على	kept
cross يَعبُر	crossed	do يفعل/يقوم	did
help يساعد	helped	get يحصل على	got
fix يُصلح	fixed		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

do research يقوم ببحث	What about ...?	ماذا عن ...?
That sounds fun! هذا يبدو ممتعًا	Great idea.	فكرة رائعة.
make sure يتأكد	save lives	ينقذ الأرواح
Me too. أنا أيضًا.	make a list of	يُعد قائمة بـ

Definitions

تعريفات

community مجتمع	a group of people who live or work together in the same place مجموعة من الأشخاص الذين يعيشون أو يعملون معًا في نفس المكان
research يبحث	to look for information to learn more about something أن يبحث عن معلومات لمعرفة المزيد عن شيء ما
vehicles مركبات	things that people use to travel, like cars, buses, and bikes الأشياء التي يستخدمها الناس للسفر، مثل السيارات والحافلات والدراجات
emergency حالة طارئة	a sudden situation that needs quick help حالة مفاجئة تحتاج إلى مساعدة سريعة
brave شجاع	not afraid to do difficult or scary things لا يخاف من القيام بأشياء صعبة أو مخيفة
control يتحكم	make something happen or stop يجعل شيئًا يحدث أو يتوقف

**(Conversation) main points** النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- Omar, Youssef, and Salma are talking about jobs that help the community.
يتحدث عُمر، ويوسف، وسلمي عن الوظائف التي تساعد المجتمع.
- Youssef wants to be a mechanic because he likes fixing things.
يريد يوسف أن يصبح ميكانيكيًا لأنه يحب إصلاح الأشياء.
- Omar wants to be a water resources engineer. A water resources engineer makes sure we get clean water.
يريد عُمر أن يصبح مهندس موارد مائية. مهندس الموارد المائية يتأكد من حصولنا على مياه نظيفة.
- Salma wants to be a paramedic. Paramedics help people in emergencies.
تريد سلمى أن تصبح مسعفة. المسعفون يساعدون الناس في حالات الطوارئ.
- Youssef and Salma like the job of a traffic officer. Traffic officers help people cross the road and control cars.
يوسف وسلمي يُحِبَّان عمل شرطي المرور. يساعد شرطي المرور الناس على عبور الطريق والتحكم في السيارات.
- Street cleaners clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful.
يقوم عمال نظافة الشوارع بتنظيف الشوارع ويساعدون في الحفاظ على جمال المدينة.

Conversation

Listen, look, and read:



page 38

استمع، انظر واقرأ:



Play Audio

Omar, Youssef, and Salma are talking about different jobs in their community.

عُمر، ويوسف، وسلمي يتحدثون عن وظائف مختلفة في مجتمعهم.

**Omar**

Hi, Youssef! Hi, Salma!

أهلاً، يا يوسف! أهلاً، ياسلمى!

2 Hey, Omar! What are you doing?

أهلاً، يا عُمر! ماذا تفعل؟

**Youssef**



3 I'm doing research about jobs that help our community.

أقوم بعمل بحث عن وظائف تساعد مجتمعنا.

4 That sounds fun! Can we help?

هذا يبدو ممتعًا! هل يمكننا المساعدة؟



Salma



5 Sure! I want to make a list of jobs and how they help the community.

بالأكيد! أريد أن أعد قائمة بالوظائف وكيف تساعد المجتمع.

6 Great idea. I want to be a mechanic.

فكرة رائعة. أريد أن أصبح ميكانيكيًا.



7 Why a mechanic?

لماذا ميكانيكيًا؟

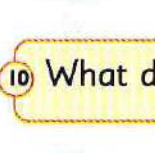
8 Because mechanics fix vehicles, and I like fixing things.

لأن الميكانيكيين يصلحون المركبات، وأنا أحب إصلاح الأشياء.



9 That's cool! I want to be a water resources engineer.

هذا رائع! أريد أن أصبح مهندس موارد مائية.



10 What do water resources engineers do?

ماذا يفعل مهندسو الموارد المائية؟



11 They make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools.

يتأكدون من حصولنا على مياه نظيفة في منازلنا ومدارسنا.

12 That's a very important job!

هذه وظيفة مهمة جدًا!



13 I want to be a paramedic. They help people in emergencies.

أريد أن أصبح مسعفة. فهم يُساعدون الناس في حالات الطوارئ.



Unit 3

Community Builders

1st term

14 That's a brave job. You'll help save lives.

هذه وظيفة شجاعة. ستساعدون في إنقاذ الأرواح.



15 I also like the job of a traffic officer.

أنا أيضًا أحب وظيفة ضابط المرور.

16 Me too. They help people cross the road and control cars.

وأنا أيضًا. يساعدون الناس على عبور الطريق والتحكم بالسيارات.



17 What about a street cleaner?

ماذا عن عامل نظافة الشارع؟

18 They clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful.

ينظفون الشوارع ويساعدون في الحفاظ على جمال المدينة.



Tryout



Look and check (✓) the correct answer:

انظر وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة:



a paramedic ☐

b architect ☐



a tailor ☐

b mechanic ☐



a mechanic ☐

b street cleaner ☐



a delivery person ☐

b traffic officer ☐

4. (b)

3. (a)

2. (a)

1. (b)

Answers:

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- 1 Ali is making a of some jobs that help our community.
a. research b. project c. list d. book
- 2 fix our vehicles.
a. Mechanics b. Paramedics c. Traffic officers d. Street cleaners
- 3 Street cleaners clean the
a. homes b. streets c. hospitals d. schools
- 4 Ali wants to be a/an
a. architect b. mechanic c. teacher d. paramedic

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 A is a group of people who live or work together in the same place.
a. job b. community c. vehicle d. mechanic
- 2 The fixed my old shirt.
a. mechanic b. paramedic c. tailor d. architect
- 3 I want to be a mechanic to fix people's
a. vehicles b. streets c. homes d. clothes
- 4 Traffic officers help people the road.
a. keep b. fix c. clean d. cross
- 5 Water resources make sure we get clean water in our homes.
a. officers b. engineers c. mechanics d. paramedics
- 6 She is doing about jobs to learn more.
a. research b. sport c. emergency d. community
- 7 Paramedics help people in emergencies. They do a job.
a. weak b. bad c. clean d. brave
- 8 A person brings food to people at home.
a. traffic b. delivery c. mechanic d. tailor

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

tailor – cars – architect – beautiful

These are my family members' jobs. My father is a street cleaner. He cleans the streets and keeps the city ⁽¹⁾ My mother is a ⁽²⁾ She fixes old clothes. My older brother is an ⁽³⁾ I want to be a mechanic when I grow up because I like fixing things. All people who work in the community help make it great.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 help – in – emergencies. – people – Paramedics

2 do? – water – What – resources – do – engineers

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 what are you doing, omar?

2 i want to make a list of jobs

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

“Jobs that help the community”

- What jobs do you think are important?
- What do you want to be when you grow up?

Lesson

2

Let's Help Our Community

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

garbage	قمامة	park	حديقة	everywhere	كل مكان
environment	بيئة	bags	أكياس	problem	مشكلة
bin	سلة مهملات	classmates	زملاء الفصل	principal	مدير/رئيس
traffic	حركة المرور	safely	بأمان	parents	آباء
drivers	سائقون	slowly	ببطء	health	صحة

Adjectives الصفات

terrible	فظيع/رهيب	noisy	صاخب	dangerous	خطير
sure	متأكد	little/young	صغير السن	better	أفضل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
look ينظر/يبدو	looked	know يعرف	knew
need يحتاج	needed	throw يرمي/يلقي	threw
ask يسأل/يطلب	asked	let يسمح	let
use يستخدم	used	hang يُعلّق	hung
join ينضم	joined	speak يتحدث	spoke
talk يتكلم	talked	give يعطي	gave
walk يمشي	walked	drive يقود	drove

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

That's not okay.	هذا ليس جيدًا.	bad for	ضار بـ
You're right.	أنت محق.	get better	يتحسن
make posters/signs	يصنع ملصقات/ياфطات	ride bikes	يركب دراجات



Play Audio

Listen, look, and read:

S B page 40

استمع، انظر واقرأ:

Mariam : Look at all the garbage near the park. It looks terrible.

Hadi : I know. People throw garbage everywhere. That's not okay.

Nour : We need to do something. It's bad for the environment.

Mariam : You're right. We can clean it this weekend.

Hadi : Yes, I can bring some garbage bags.

Nour : I can ask my teacher to let us make posters to hang around the park.

Mariam : That's a great idea! I'll write, "Please use the bin."

Hadi : Can we ask other students to join us?

Nour : Yes, we can. I'm sure our classmates will be able to help too.

Mariam : But there's another problem—traffic near the school.

Hadi : It's very noisy and dangerous.

Nour : We can't cross the road safely in the morning.

Mariam : Maybe we can ask our principal to help.

Hadi : Can she talk to someone about it?

Nour : Yes! She may be able to speak with the traffic officer.

Nour : I think we should make signs that say "Drive Slowly!"

Mariam : Can we give the signs to parents and drivers?

Hadi : Yes, we can, and we should also walk or ride bikes when we can.

Nour : That's better for our health, too.

Mariam : My little brother can't ride a bike yet, but he walks.

Hadi : My sister is young, but she's able to ride with me.

Nour : When we all help, things get better.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Put your garbage in this
 a. pen b. pin c. bin d. book
- 2 Our school principal let us the posters around the park.
 a. hang b. speak c. talk d. walk
- 3 To solve the problem, we can walk to school.
 a. traffic b. sign c. poster d. garbage
- 4 Garbage is for the environment.
 a. good b. bad c. better d. great

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

threw – cleaned – noisy – problem

My classmates and I helped our community. We ⁽¹⁾ garbage in the park near our school. We also hung posters around the school. The posters said, "Please use the bin." We found another ⁽²⁾ Traffic near the school in the morning was ⁽³⁾ and dangerous. We told our teachers and principal. They spoke with the traffic officer to control the cars. Now, the park is clean, and the street is safe.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- can she talk to someone about it

4 Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 Who will bring garbage bags?
- 2 Why is the traffic near the school a problem?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Expressing ability in the present التعبير عن القدرة في الحاضر

Usage & Form

الاستخدام والتكوين

Affirmative

الإثبات



- To talk about ability in the present, we use: • للتحدث عن القدرة في الحاضر، نستخدم:

Subject (فاعل) + **can** (يستطيع) + verb (infinitive) (مصدر الفعل) ...

Ex: – I **can** bring some garbage bags.



Subject + **am/is/are** + **able to** (قادر على) + verb (infinitive) ...

Ex: – My sister **is able to** ride a bike.



Negative

النفي



- To talk about inability in the present, we use: • للتحدث عن عدم القدرة في الحاضر، نستخدم:

Subject + **can't** (لا يستطيع) + verb (infinitive) ...

Ex: – We **can't** cross the road safely in the morning.



Subject + **am/is/are** + **not able to** (غير قادر على) + verb (infinitive) ...

Ex: – They **are not (aren't) able to** carry the box.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My little brother able to count to ten.
a. am b. is c. are d. can
- 2 She can't play football, but she play tennis.
a. can b. can't c. able to d. are able to
- 3 Doha can't a car on her own.
a. drove b. drives c. driving d. drive
- 4 I to swim in the sea.
a. am able b. am able to c. able to d. able
- 5 I can to school every day.
a. walk b. to walk c. walks d. walking
- 6 He run fast. His legs hurt.
a. can b. can't c. able to d. is able
- 7 We are able solve the problem of traffic.
a. in b. on c. to d. at
- 8 They are able to the community.
a. helps b. helping c. help d. helped

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 I can (**speaks**) English well.
- 2 She and her sister (**is**) able to make a cake.
- 3 He is just a little baby. He (**can**) read.
- 4 We are able to (**runs**) in the playground.
- 5 Wael (**able to**) sing beautifully. His voice is terrible!
- 6 He (**can't**) deliver things. He is a very talented delivery person.
- 7 Ali isn't able to (**fixed**) the car.
- 8 Laila can't (**riding**) her bike because she needs help.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

To help our community, we can do many things every day. We can keep our community clean by not throwing garbage in the streets or parks. We can make posters and signs to encourage people to put garbage in bins. If our school is near, we can walk or ride a bike to it. This is better for our health and can also solve the traffic problem. We can help our teachers at school and our parents at home. Things get better when we all help each other.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
 a. park b. street c. school d. community
- 2 We can make posters and to encourage people to put garbage in bins.
 a. charts b. lines c. pictures d. signs

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 How can we keep our community clean?

.....

- 4 Why is walking or riding a bike good for us?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 Nada can't (plays) the piano.
- 2 My little brother (not able) read road signs.

Lesson 3

(A) The Proud Rose

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



thorns
أشواك



petals
بتلات



peck
ينقر



unpleasant
بغيف/كره

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

desert	صحراء	rose	وردة	beauty	جمال
creature	مخلوق	gently	بلطف	cactus	صبار
unkindly	بقسوة	seasons	فصول	summer	الصيف

Adjectives الصفات

dry	جاف	rough	خشن	sharp	حاد
sweet	حلو	weak	ضعيف	embarrassed	مُحزج
mean	لثيم/خبث	refreshed	منتعش	surprised	متفاجئ
bright	زاه	soft	ناعم/رقيق	special	خاص/مميز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
sparkle يلمع	sparkled	grow يزرع/ينمو	grew
judge يحكم	judged	think يفكر/يعتقد	thought
admire يعجب	admired	shine يشرق	shone
believe يعتقد/يصدق	believed	begin يبدأ	began
treat يعامل	treated	see يرى	saw
smile يتنسم	smiled	drink يشرب	drank
share يشارك	shared	say يقول	said



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

Once upon a time,	في قديم الزمان،	proud of	فخور بـ
covered in	مُغطى بـ	make fun of	يسخر من
From that day on,	منذ ذلك اليوم،	gave off	انبعث
dry up	يجف	lose her color	تفقد لونها
flew away	طار بعيدًا	came back to life	عاد إلى الحياة

Definitions

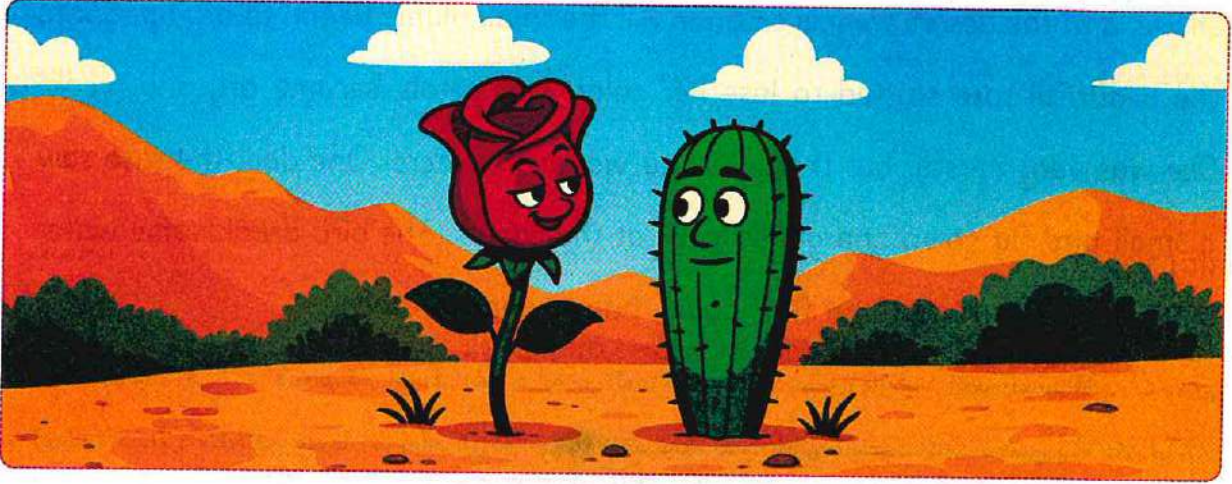
تعريفات

thorns	أشواك	the sharp points that grow on the stem or a branch of a plant to protect it	النقاط الحادة التي تنمو على الساق أو فرع نبات لحمايته
petals	بتلات	the soft, colorful parts of a flower that surround its center	الأجزاء الناعمة والملونة من الزهرة التي تحيط بمركزها
peck	ينقر	to hit or pick up something with a beak, like a bird does	أن يضرب شيئًا ما أو يلتقطه بمنقاره، كما يفعل الطائر
unpleasant	بغض/كراهية	when something is not nice and makes you feel unhappy or uncomfortable	عندما يكون هناك شيء ما غير لطيف ويجعلك تشعر بالحزن أو عدم الارتياح

Tip!

- Every story has a moral. A **moral** is the lesson or message we learn from a story. It usually teaches us the difference between right and wrong, and helps us think about how we should act in real life.

- لكل قصة عبرة. والعبرة هي الدرس أو الرسالة التي تتعلمها من القصة. وعادةً ما نُعلِّمنا الفرق بين الصواب والخطأ، وتساعدنا على التفكير في كيفية التصرف في الحياة الواقعية.

**The Proud Rose****الوردة المغرورة****Beginning,**

Once upon a time, in a dry desert far away, there lived a beautiful rose. She had soft red petals that sparkled in the sunlight and gave off a sweet, lovely smell. Every creature in the desert admired her beauty, and the rose knew it. She was very proud of how she looked and believed she was the most special plant in the desert. Growing next to the rose was an old, rough cactus. He was covered in long, sharp thorns and didn't have any flowers or bright colors. The rose didn't like the cactus at all. She looked at him every day and thought he was unpleasant to look at. "Why do you have so many thorns?" she would ask. "You're so rough and unpleasant to look at." Even though the cactus never said anything mean back, the rose kept making fun of him.

في قديم الزمان، في صحراء جافة بعيدة، عاشت وردة جميلة. كانت بتلاتها حمراء ناعمة تتلألأ في ضوء الشمس وتبعث منها رائحة حلوة وجميلة. أعجب كل مخلوق في الصحراء بجمالها، وكانت الوردة تعرف ذلك. كانت فخورة جدًا بمظهرها وتعتقد أنها أكثر نبات مميز في الصحراء. كان ينمو بجانب الوردة صبار قديم وخشن. كان مغطى بأشواك طويلة وحادة ولم يكن لديه أي أزهار أو ألوان زاهية. لم تحب الوردة الصبار على الإطلاق. كانت تنظر إليه كل يوم وتعتقد أنه غير سار للنظر. «لماذا لديك الكثير من الأشواك؟» كانت تسأل. «أنت خشن للغاية وغير سار للنظر». على الرغم من أن الصبار لم يقل أي شيء خبيث أبدًا، إلا أن الوردة استمرت في السخرية منه.



Middle

Seasons passed, and one year, the summer was much hotter than usual. The sun shone, and the desert grew even drier. All the small plants began to dry up. Soon, the beautiful rose started to lose her color. Her petals became dry and weak. She was very thirsty, but there was no water anywhere. One day, the rose saw a small bird fly down and gently peck at the cactus. The bird drank some water from inside the cactus and flew away, happy and refreshed.

مرت الفصول، وفي أحد الأعوام، كان الصيف أشد حرارة من المعتاد. أشرقت الشمس، وازدادت الصحراء جفافاً. بدأت جميع النباتات الصغيرة بالجفاف. وسرعان ما بدأت الوردة الجميلة تفقد لونها. جفت بتلاتها وضعفت. كانت عطشى جداً، لكن لم يكن هناك ماء في أي مكان. في أحد الأيام، رأت الوردة طائراً صغيراً يطير وينقر الصبار برفق. شرب الطائر بعض الماء من داخل الصبار وطار بعيداً، سعيداً ومنتعشاً.

End

The rose was surprised. She didn't know the cactus had water inside. Feeling embarrassed, the rose spoke to the cactus. "I'm sorry for the way I treated you," she said. "I didn't know you were so strong and helpful. Could you please give me some water?" The kind cactus smiled and shared his water with the rose. Slowly, the rose came back to life. From that day on, she never judged anyone by how they looked again.

تفاجأت الوردة. لم تكن تعلم أن الصبار يحتوي على ماء بداخله. شعرت الوردة بالحرج، فتحدثت إلى الصبار. «أنا آسفة على طريقة معاملتي لك»، قالت الوردة، «لم أكن أعلم أنك قوى ومفيد لهذه الدرجة. هل يمكنك من فضلك أن تعطيني بعض الماء؟» ابتسم الصبار اللطيف وشارك ماءه مع الوردة. تدريجياً، عادت الوردة إلى الحياة. منذ ذلك اليوم، لم تعد تحكم على أي شخص من خلال مظهره مرة أخرى.

The moral of the story العبرة (الدرس المستفاد) من القصة

Never judge others by how they look.

لا تحكم على الآخرين أبداً من خلال مظهرهم.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 are the soft, colorful parts of a flower that surround its center.
a. Petals b. Thorns c. Deserts d. Birds
- 2 The cactus has rough and sharp
a. beaks b. creatures c. thorns d. legs
- 3 The smell of the garbage was very
a. sweet b. unpleasant c. refreshing d. dry
- 4 To is to hit or pick up something with a beak, like a bird does.
a. peck b. sparkle c. treat d. judge

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

refreshed – color – embarrassed – seasons

The summer was hotter than ever. The desert dried up, and small plants couldn't live. The rose looked weak and lost her beautiful ⁽¹⁾ She was thirsty but couldn't find water. Then she saw a bird drink from the cactus. The bird flew away looking happy and ⁽²⁾ The rose remembered how unkind she was to the cactus. She felt ⁽³⁾ and said sorry. The cactus smiled and gave her some water.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- could you give me some water

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 Why was the rose proud?
- 2 What is the moral of the story?

B Pronunciation



Play Audio

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

- A syllable is a word part with one vowel sound.

المقطع الصوتي هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

Two-syllable words كلمات ذات مقطعين صوتيين



Word

tailor

Syllables

tai-lor



Word

traffic

Syllables

traf-fic

Three-syllable words كلمات ذات ثلاثة مقاطع صوتية



Word

mechanic

Syllables

me-chan-ic



Word

architect

Syllables

ar-chi-tect



Word

vehicle

Syllables

ve-hi-cle



Word

officer

Syllables

of-fi-cer

Stress in Words التشديد في الكلمات

- Stress is the part of the word we say louder and stronger.

التشديد هو جزء من الكلمة نقوله بصوت أعلى وأقوى.

تشير هذه الدائرة ● إلى أن المقطع فوقها، والذي تحته خط، مشدد (stressed).

وتشير هذه الدائرة ● إلى أن المقطع فوقها غير مشدد (unstressed).

- In one-syllable words, the whole word is stressed.

Ex: nurse

في الكلمات المكونة من مقطع صوتي واحد، يتم التشديد على المقطع الصوتي الأول.

- In two-syllable words, stress is usually on the first syllable.

Ex: tai-lor

في الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين، يكون الضغط عادةً على المقطع الأول.

- In some three-syllable words, stress is on the second syllable.

Ex: me-chan-ic

في بعض الكلمات المكونة من ثلاثة مقاطع صوتية، يكون التشديد على المقطع الصوتي الثاني.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In a beautiful garden, all the flowers laughed at a rough cactus. A proud rose made fun of him every day and talked about her pretty petals. The cactus said nothing. One hot summer, there was no rain. The flowers and the rose were very thirsty and began to lose their color. But the cactus had water inside. He shared some drops with the flowers and the rose. They drank happily. The rose felt sorry for her unkind words before. After that, the flowers did not laugh at the cactus. They learned to be kind and not judge others by how they look.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The flowers and the cactus were in a beautiful
 a. desert b. garden c. street d. road
- 2 The underlined pronoun "He" refers to the
 a. flower b. rain c. cactus d. summer

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 Who made fun of the cactus every day?

- 4 What did the cactus do when the flowers and the rose were thirsty?

- 5 How did the rose feel after she drank water from the cactus?

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- 1 red – The rose's – petals – in – sparkled – the sun.

- 2 many – thorns? – do – Why – have – you – so



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

scientist	عالم	learning	التعلم	research	بحث
people	ناس/أشخاص	gold particles	جزيئات الذهب	materials	مواد
chemistry	الكيمياء	study	دراسة	achievements	إنجازات
cancer	السرطان	food banks	بنوك الطعام	types	أنواع
discoveries	اكتشافات	properly	بطريقة صحيحة	hero	بطل
science	علوم	a human hair	شعرة إنسان	way	طريقة
food waste	هدر الطعام	effects	آثار	leftovers	بقايا الطعام
expert	خبير	work	عمل	idea	فكرة
causes	أسباب	rule	قاعدة	solutions	حلول
meals	وجبات	animals	حيوانات	restaurants	مطاعم
pollution	تلوث	The United States	الولايات المتحدة	nanoscience	علم النانو (علم الجسيمات الدقيقة جدًا)
nanoparticles	جزيئات/جسيمات النانو	Ain Shams University	جامعة عين شمس	U.S. National Medal for Science	قلادة العلوم الوطنية الأمريكية

Adjectives الصفات

brilliant	عبقري	Egyptian	مصري	true	حقيقي
scientific	علمي	tiny	دقيق/ضئيل الحجم	global	عالمي
easy	سهل	poor	فقير	extra	زائد/إضافي



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
study يدرس	studied	become يصبح	became
continue يكمل/يستمر	continued	eat يأكل	ate
treat يعالج	treated	make يجعل/يصنع	made
detect يكشف	detected	go يذهب	went
donate يتبرع	donated	feed يطعم	fed
shop يتسوق	shopped		
support يدعم	supported		
store يخزن	stored		
cause يسبب	caused		

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

born in وُلد في	from a young age منذ الصغر
was named after سُميت باسم	waste money/water يهدر المال/المياه
source of pride مصدر فخر	golden touch لمسة ذهبية
had a great love for كان لديه حب عظيم لـ	received awards تسلم جوائز

Look and read:

انظر و اقرأ:

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed: Science With a Golden Touch

د. مصطفى السيد: العلم بلمسة ذهبية

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist! He was born in Egypt in 1933 and had a great love for learning from a young age. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his scientific research.

دكتور مصطفى السيد هو عالم مصري عبقرى! وُلد في مصر عام 1933 وكان لديه حب كبير للتعلم منذ الصغر. درس في جامعة عين شمس بالقاهرة قبل الذهاب إلى الولايات المتحدة ليكمل أبحاثه العلمية.





Dr. El-Sayed became a global expert in chemistry and nanoscience. Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things-much smaller than a human hair. One of his most important discoveries is called El-Sayed's Rule, a scientific idea that was named after him.

أصبح دكتور السيد خبيرًا عالميًا في الكيمياء وعلم النانو. علم النانو هو دراسة الأشياء متناهية الصغر-أصغر بكثير من شعرة الإنسان. ومن أهم اكتشافاته "قاعدة السيد"، وهي فكرة علمية سُميت باسمه.

One of his biggest achievements is his work with tiny gold particles. He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors detect and treat some types of cancer.

ويعتبر عمله مع جزيئات الذهب الدقيقة أحد أكبر إنجازاته. فقد اكتشف كيف أن جسيمات الذهب تلك يمكن استخدامها لمساعدة الأطباء في كشف بعض أنواع من مرض السرطان ومعالجتها.

Because of his important discoveries, Dr. El-Sayed has received many major awards, including the U.S. National Medal of Science. He's a true hero of science and a source of pride for Egypt!

بسبب اكتشافاته المهمة، تسلم دكتور السيد جوائز كبرى كثيرة، ومنها قلادة العلوم الوطنية الأمريكية. إنه بطل حقيقي في العلوم ومصدر فخر لمصر!

Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing a biography

نصائح لكتابة سيرة ذاتية



- Start with key facts.

ابدأ بالحقائق الرئيسية.

Ex: Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist!

- Tell about their early life.

اكتب عن حياتهم المبكرة.

Ex: He had a great love for learning from a young age.

- Say about what they did.

قل عما فعلوه.

Ex: He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors.

- Use the correct time order.

استخدم الترتيب الزمني الصحيح.

- Add fun facts.

أضف حقائق ممتعة.

Ex: Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things – much smaller than a human hair.

- Use clear and simple language.

استخدم لغة واضحة وبسيطة.

- End with their impact.

اختم بتوضيح أثرهم.

Ex: He's a true hero of science and a source of pride for Egypt!



Look and read:

انظر و اقرأ:

Food Waste In Egypt هدر الطعام في مصر



Causes

أسباب

- People make more food than they eat.
يصنع الناس طعاماً أكثر مما يأكلون.
- Restaurants throw away leftover food.
ترمي المطاعم الطعام المتبقي.
- No easy way to donate extra food.
عدم وجود طريقة سهلة للتبرع بالطعام الزائد.
- People don't think about wasting food.
الناس لا تفكر في مشكلة هدر الطعام.

Effects

آثار

- Good food is thrown away.
يتم رمي الطعام الجيد.
- Many poor people don't get food.
عدم حصول الكثير من الفقراء على الطعام.
- Wasting food wastes money and water.
هدر الطعام يؤدي إلى هدر المال والمياه.
- More garbage, which causes more pollution.
مزيد من القمامة، مما يسبب المزيد من التلوث.

Solutions

حلول

- Plan meals
خطط الوجبات
- Support food banks
ادعم بنك الطعام
- Store food properly
خزن الطعام بطريقة صحيحة
- Shop smart
تسوق بذكاء
- Feed animals leftovers
أطعم الحيوانات ببقايا الطعام

Tips for making a poster about a community problem

نصائح لصنع ملصق عن مشكلة مجتمعية



- Identify a problem in your community and suggest some creative solutions.
حدّد مشكلة في مجتمعك واقترح بعض الحلول الإبداعية.
- Answer these questions to help you:
أجب عن هذه الأسئلة لتساعدك:
 - What are the causes?
ما الأسباب؟
 - What are the effects?
ما الآثار؟
 - What are the solutions?
ما الحلول؟
- Use a main heading and sub-headings.
استخدم عنواناً رئيسياً وعناوين فرعية.
- Add pictures and details.
أضف صور وتفاصيل.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 is the study of very tiny things.
a. Pollution b. Chemistry c. Research d. Nanoscience
- 2 Maria blood to sick people who are in need.
a. continues b. wastes c. donates d. receives
- 3 Throwing away is one cause of food waste.
a. leftovers b. flowers c. water d. money
- 4 This scientist has important in science to help us.
a. discoveries b. awards c. meals d. causes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

doctor – pride – awards – expert

Dr. Ahmed Zewail was a brilliant Egyptian scientist. He studied at Alexandria University. He became a global ⁽¹⁾ in chemistry. Because of his great achievements, he received different important ⁽²⁾, including the Nobel Prize. His amazing research truly helped us a lot. His love for science made him a hero of science. Dr. Ahmed Zewail became a source of ⁽³⁾ for Egypt.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 born – Egypt. – was – El-Sayed – in – Dr. Mostafa

2 make – People – food – more than – eat. – they

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

• Dr. El-sayed became a global expert in chemistry

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

"A brilliant scientist"

(research – achievements)

Unit 3 Review

Vocabulary

paramedic	مُسعف	architect	مهندسة معمارية	mechanic	ميكانيكي
rough	خَشِن	creature	مخلوق	emergencies	حالات الطوارئ
brave	شجاع	cactus	صَّبار	principal	مدير/رئيس
bin	سلة مهملات	petals	بتلات	rose	وردة
thorns	أشواك	refreshed	منتعش	unpleasant	بغيفض / كريه
embarrassed	مُحْجَرَج	chemistry	الكيمياء	nanoscience	علم النانو
achievements	إنجازات	discoveries	اكتشافات	scientific	علمي
traffic officer	ضابط المرور	hero	بطل	awards	جوائز
leftovers	بقايا الطعام	tailor	خياط	delivery person	عامل التوصيل
water resources engineer	مهندس موارد مائية	nanoparticles	جزيئات/جسيمات النانو	street cleaner	عامل نظافة الشارع

Language

Expressing ability in the present

- To express ability and inability in the present, we use:

• للتعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في الحاضر، نستخدم:

Affirmative



Subject + can + verb (infinitive) ...
am/is/are able to

Ex: – I **can** bring some garbage bags.

– My sister **is able to** ride a bike.

Negative



Subject + can't + verb (infinitive) ...
am/is/are + not able to

Ex: – We **can't** cross the road safely in the morning.

– They **aren't able to** carry the box.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1

Jobs That Help the Community

- Omar is doing research about jobs that help the community.

يُجري عُمر بحثًا عن الوظائف التي تساعد المجتمع.

- Youssef wants to be a mechanic because he likes fixing things.

يريد يوسف أن يصبح ميكانيكيًا لأنه يحب تصليح الأشياء.

- Omar wants to be a water resources engineer who provides clean water. Salma wants to be a paramedic who helps people in emergencies.

يريد عُمر أن يصبح مهندس موارد مائية الذي يوفر المياه النظيفة. تريد سلمى أن تصبح مسعفة تساعد الناس في حالات الطوارئ.

- Youssef and Salma also like the job of a traffic officer, who helps people cross roads.

يحب كل من يوسف وسلمى وظيفة ضابط المرور الذي يساعد الناس في عبور الطريق.

- Street cleaners keep the city clean and beautiful.

عمال نظافة الشوارع يحافظون على المدينة جميلة ونظيفة.

Lesson 2

Let's Help Our Community

- The students see garbage near the park and want to clean it.

يرى الطلاب قمامة بالقرب من الحديقة ويريدون تنظيفها.

- Hadi will bring bags, and Nour will ask her teacher to hang posters.

سيُحضِر هادي الأكياس، وستطلب نور من معلمها تعليق ملصقات.

- They also talk about the noisy traffic near the school.

يتحدثون أيضًا عن المرور الصاخب بالقرب من المدرسة.

- They will tell the principal, make signs, and walk or ride bikes more often.

سيخبرون المدير، وسيصنعون لافتات، وسيُكثِّرون من المشي أو ركوب الدراجات.

Lessons 4&5 A Biography of an Egyptian Hero/Think and Create

- Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a great Egyptian scientist who was born in 1933.

دكتور مصطفى السيد عالم مصري عظيم والذي وُلد عام 1933.

- He studied in Egypt and did research in the United States.

درس في مصر وأجرى أبحاثًا في الولايات المتحدة.

- He worked with nanoscience and found ways to treat cancer using gold.

عمل في علم النانو ووجد طرقًا لعلاج السرطان باستخدام الذهب.

- He received many big awards, like the U.S. National Medal of Science.

حصل على العديد من الجوائز الكبرى، مثل قلادة العلوم الوطنية الأمريكية.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

مُسَعَف	عامل التوصيل
مهندسة معمارية	ضابط المرور
ميكانيكي	مجتمع
مهندس موارد مائية	مركبات
عامل نظافة الشارع	حالات طوارئ
خياط	شجاع

Lesson (2)

قمامة	خطير
فطيع/رهيب	صاحب
بيثة	حركة المرور
سلة مهملات	زملاء الفصل
سائقون	بأمان

Lesson (3)

خيش	بغض/كره
متعش	بتلات
صبار	مخلوق
أشواك	لثيم/خبث
فصول	مُحزج

Lessons (4&5)

الكيمياء	هدر الطعام
إنجازات	مرض السرطان
اكتشافات	بقايا الطعام
علم النانو	بطل



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
fix		get	
cross		look	
join		feed	
judge		hang	
sparkle		drive	
treat		use	
donate		know	
continue		think	
detect		make	
shop		keep	
support		let	
store		speak	
cause		need	
speak		do	
admire		shine	
clean		study	



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Trash in the streets"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

Nouns

1. problem
2. bin
3. garbage

Verbs

1. clean
2. throw
3. hang

Others

1. terrible
2. big
3. many

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصنفها في الصناديق أدناه.

2 Form your sentences.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. Trash is a big problem in many places.
2. Some people throw garbage on the ground.
3. The streets look terrible.
4. We should clean our community and hang signs to tell people to use the bins.

3 Write your paragraph.

Trash is a big problem in many places. Some people throw garbage on the ground. The streets look terrible. Also, garbage pollutes the environment. So, we should clean our community and hang signs to tell people to use the bins. When we all help, our community will look clean and great.

اكتب فقرتك.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"Jobs that help the community"

Nouns

1.
2.
3.

Verbs

1.
2.
3.

Others

1.
2.
3.

Your sentences

1.
2.
3.
4.

Your paragraph فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

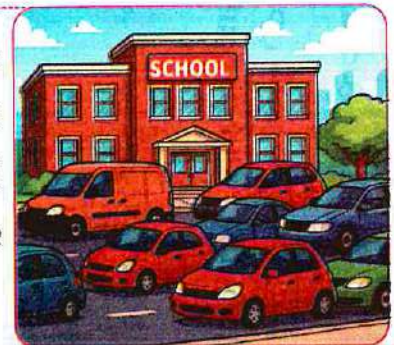
Jobs helping the community

There are many jobs that help the community. Mechanics fix vehicles so people can travel safely. Paramedics help in emergencies and save lives. Traffic officers keep roads safe and help people cross the roads. Water resources engineers make sure we have clean water to drink. Each person plays an important role every day in our communities.



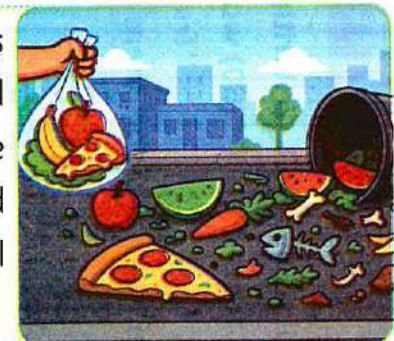
Problems in my community

Many communities have problems, like traffic. Traffic near schools is dangerous. Cars go too fast, and it's hard for children to cross the road. It is so noisy. We should make signs that say, "Drive Slowly." When everyone works together, the community becomes a better place.



Food waste problem

People make more food than they eat. Also, restaurants throw away leftover food. As a result, good food is wasted and pollution increases. To solve this problem, people should plan meals, shop wisely, support food banks, feed animals leftovers, and store food properly. These small actions can help reduce waste.



An Egyptian hero

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous Egyptian scientist born in 1933. He studied in Egypt and the U.S. He became an expert in chemistry and nanoscience. He discovered ways to use gold nanoparticles to help treat cancer. He won many awards and made Egypt proud of his great work.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Read and complete using the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

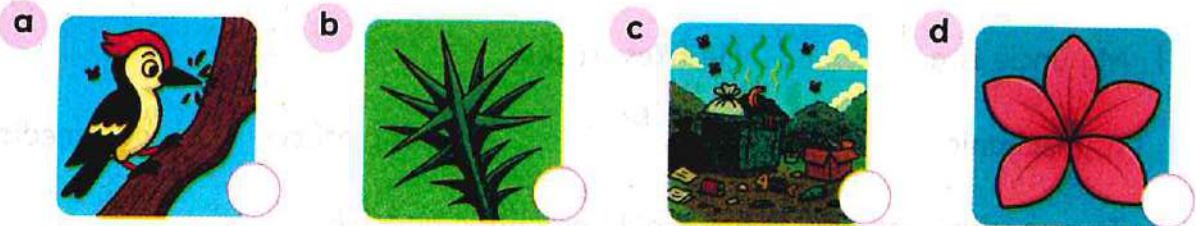
cleaners – research – emergency – important – tailor

- 1 The fixed my old dress.
- 2 Adam is doing for school.
- 3 Yesterday, I saw a paramedic helping people in an
- 4 Street help keep the city beautiful.
- 5 Every job is and matters.

2 Read, look, and number:

انظر، اقرأ ورّقم:

- 1 Thorns are the sharp points that grow on the stem or branch of a plant to protect it.
- 2 Petals are the soft, colorful parts of a flower that surround its center.
- 3 To peck is to hit or pick up something with a beak, like a bird does.
- 4 Unpleasant is when something is not nice and makes you feel unhappy or uncomfortable.



3 Write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 She (not can) walk to school.
- 2 I am (able) run fast.

Test on unit (3)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a Egyptian scientist.

- a. dry b. brilliant c. rough d. soft

2. He studied at University.

- a. Ain Shams b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Alexandria

3. He continued his research in

- a. Egypt b. Italy
c. the United States d. France

4. His achievements helped a lot.

- a. doctors b. police officers c. teachers d. engineers

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle is a He fixes trucks.

- a. mechanic b. tailor c. traffic officer d. paramedic

2. The weather was very hot. I drank lemonade and felt

- a. spicy b. refreshed c. hot d. rough

3. I asked the school about my exam results.

- a. cleaner b. scientist c. principal d. doctor

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****thorns – dry – judge – cactus**

In a very dry desert, a proud rose often laughed at a rough cactus for looking ugly. One summer, the rose began to ⁽¹⁾ up from the very hot sun. She saw a bird drinking water from the ⁽²⁾ and knew he had water inside. The cactus kindly helped her. The rose learned not to ⁽³⁾ others by how they look.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Some students saw garbage near the park, and it looked terrible. They decided to clean it together and make posters to tell people to use the bin. They planned to ask other students to join. They also talked about another problem; traffic near the school. It was noisy and unsafe, especially in the morning. They asked the principal to speak to the traffic officer and thought about making signs that say, "Drive Slowly." They also talked about safer ways to come to school like walking or biking.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about community
a. problems b. buildings c. markets d. schools
2. The students decided to make to tell people to use bins.
a. posters b. flyers c. signs d. letters

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What are the two problems mentioned in the text?

.....

4. Who could speak to the traffic officer?

.....

5. What are safer ways to go to school?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. throw – food. – away – Restaurants – leftover

.....

2. safely – can't – We – cross – the roads – the morning. – in

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The traffic officer can (solving) the traffic problem.

2. I (be) able to go to work today.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. My cousin noha is a tailor

.....

2. dr. El-Sayed is a brilliant egyptian scientist.

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

“Different jobs in the community”

(fix – clean)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

resources – jobs – homes – emergencies – paramedic

Dina : Hello Farida, what are you doing?

Farida : I'm reading about ⁽¹⁾ that help the community.

Dina : I see. Did you hear about the job of water ⁽²⁾ engineer?

Farida : Yes, they help give clean water to ⁽³⁾ What do you want to be to help your community?

Dina : I want to be a ⁽⁴⁾ to help people in ⁽⁵⁾

Farida : That's cool! I want to be an architect.

2 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. traffic officer – street cleaner – mechanic – petals (.....)
2. cactus – tree – rose – vehicle (.....)
3. buses – bikes – clothes – cars (.....)
4. rough – embarrassed – unpleasant – seasons (.....)
5. do – job – fix – cross (.....)

3 Reorder:

1. The cactus – thorns. – is – in – covered
.....

2. isn't – quickly. – able to – She – run
.....

3. I – bring – garbage bags. – can – some
.....

4. dangerous. – Traffic – schools – near – is
.....

5. help – Paramedics – lives. – save – people's
.....

Review 1

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt



buy souvenirs



make furniture



play music



walk to a small museum



visit ancient sites



take photos

Unit 2 Our Nature



natural fertilizer



weeds



hibiscus



basil



plant



water



pull out

Unit 3 Community Builders



paramedic



architect



water resources
engineer



mechanic



tailor



delivery person



street cleaner



traffic officer

Language Summary

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

Present simple tense

- We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

Affirmative



I, You, We, They, Plural noun + **verb (infinitive)** ...
He, She, It, Singular noun + **verb (infinitive) + -s/-es/-ies** ...

Ex: – My father **drinks** coffee every day.
– She **protects** the environment.

Negative



Subject + **don't/doesn't** + verb (infinitive) ...

Ex: – I **don't** like pizza.
– She **doesn't** study at night.

Yes/No question



Do/Does + subject + **verb (infinitive) ...?**

Ex: **Do** you visit your grandpa?
– Yes, I **do**.
– No, I **don't**.

Wh-question



Question word + **do/does** + subject + **verb (infinitive) ...?**

Ex: – When **do** you go to bed?
I **go** to bed at 9 p.m.

Unit 2 Our Nature

Present continuous tense

- We use the present continuous to talk about actions happening now.

Affirmative



Subject + **am/is/are** + verb + **-ing** ...

Ex: – Hana **is** playing in the garden now.
– We **are** studying English.

**Negative**Subject + **am/is/are** + **not (n't)** + verb + -ing ...

Ex: – We **are not** watching TV.
 – He **isn't** playing football now.

Yes/No question

Am/Is/Are + subject + verb + -ing ...?

Ex: **Is** he eating his lunch at the moment?– Yes, he **is**. – No, he **isn't**.**Ex:** **Are** they reading a book?– Yes, they **are**. – No, they **aren't**.**Wh-question**Question word + **am/is/are** + subject + verb + -ing ...?**Ex:** – What **are** you doing now?I **am** eating pizza.**Unit 3 Community Builders****Expressing ability in the present**

- To express ability and inability in the present, we use:

AffirmativeSubject + **can** + verb (infinitive) ...
am/is/are able to**Ex:** – I **can** write stories.– My father **is able to** drive a car.**Negative**Subject + **can't** + verb (infinitive) ...
am/is/are + not able to**Ex:** – We **can't** hang the posters.– I **am not able to** ride a bike.

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. School day at 7:30 a.m.

- a. ends b. begins c. finishes d. leaves

2. We sing the national

- a. song b. word c. anthem d. speech

3. We study Arabic,, math, and science.

- a. English b. French c. German d. Italian

4. I play with my friends in the

- a. class b. park c. street d. playground

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Plants need water,, and care to grow well.

- a. sunset b. sunscreen c. sunlight d. sunglasses

2. are things that people use to travel, like cars, buses, and bikes.

- a. Vehicles b. Emergencies c. Petals d. Clothes

3. Nour wants to her dress green.

- a. harvest b. catch c. dye d. live



3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**clear – beach – hats – rainy**

The weather today is very different from one city to another in Egypt. In Alexandria, it is ⁽¹⁾ and windy. There is a lot of rain. The streets are wet. The waves are high. Not many people are going outside. In Cairo, the weather is warm and sunny. In Aswan, it's hot. The sky is ⁽²⁾, and the sun is very strong. People are wearing ⁽³⁾ and sunglasses.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Each worker does their best to help our community. Water resources engineers make sure we get clean water in our homes, schools, and other places. Paramedics do an important job. They work hard to help people in emergencies and save lives. Traffic officers help people cross the road and control cars. Without them, traffic would be noisy and dangerous. Street cleaners clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful. Mechanics fix cars and buses to help us move from one place to another. I think all jobs are important.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about in our community.
a. homes b. jobs c. resources d. cars
2. work hard to help people in emergencies and save lives.
a. Paramedics b. Street cleaners c. Traffic officers d. Mechanics

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What do water resources engineers do?

.....

4. Why are street cleaners important?

.....

5. What would happen without traffic officers?

.....

**(C) Writing**

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. river – flooded – The – soil. – and brought – good

2. the signs – Can – to – we – drivers? – give

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. (Do) Hala wake up early every day?

2. They aren't (play) video games now.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. our school organized a trip to Wadi El rayan.

2. why do you have so many thorns

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

“Ras Mohamed National Park”

(coral reefs – protected area)

Review 1

Test (2)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian
a. scientist b. engineer c. doctor d. teacher
2. Dr. El-Sayed became a global expert in and nanoscience.
a. art b. math c. chemistry d. geography
3. Nanoscience is about studying things.
a. big b. rough c. huge d. tiny
4. Dr. El-Sayed has received many major
a. awards b. toys c. bags d. effects

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish.
a. loom b. project c. fishing net d. carpet
2. There are sand in the desert.
a. dunes b. dams c. lakes d. skeletons
3. If you touch the cactus, they may hurt you.
a. petals b. thorns c. seasons d. birds

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****animals – nature – trees – snorkel**

Ras Mohamed National Park is famous for its coral reefs, colorful fish, and clear sea. People visit it to swim, ⁽¹⁾, and dive. The park has many ⁽²⁾, like sea turtles, dolphins, and birds. You can also see mountains and mangrove ⁽³⁾ near the beach. Ras Mohamed is a protected place, so people must care for it. It's a wonderful place for people who love the sea, animals, and peaceful landscapes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It flows through Egypt and brings life to the land. Many animals live in and near it, like big fish, crocodiles, and birds like kingfishers, herons, and ducks. Farmers use its water to grow food. Green plants grow along the Nile. They make cool, shady places for animals there. Small frogs and insects live close to the water, too. In the past, the river flooded and brought rich soil. The Ancient Egyptians built temples near it. The Nile was important in the past and is still important today.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Nile is one of the rivers in the world.
a. smallest b. strongest c. shortest d. longest
2. The Ancient Egyptians built near the Nile.
a. temples b. homes c. schools d. parks

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What happened when the Nile flooded?

.....

4. Why do farmers use the Nile water?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. old – photos – They – of – streets. – take

2. plants – kinds of – do – have? – you – What

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. She is able (climb) mountains.

2. (Is) you traveling to Alexandria at the moment?

7 Punctuate the following:

1. people don't think about wasting food

2. Hazem visits Khan El khalili with his family

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

Your name is Salma and your email address is (salma@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Mona and her email address is (mona@yahoo.com).

"Your Trip to Wadi El Rayan"

- When did you go there?
- What did you do there?

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4

Unit

Resources Around Us



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Talk about materials used in Egypt
- Share ideas with a partner about how to save energy
- Express opinions and give advice using modal verbs

- التحدث عن المواد الخام المستخدمة في مصر
- مشاركة الأفكار مع شريك حول كيفية توفير الطاقة
- التعبير عن الآراء وتقديم النصائح باستخدام الأفعال الناقصة

Listening

- Identify key facts in short texts about materials and energy
- Follow conversations about real life topics
- Identify specific information using context clues and key vocabulary
- Identify long and short /u:/ and /ʊ/

- تحديد الحقائق الرئيسية في النصوص القصيرة حول المواد الخام والطاقة
- متابعة محادثات حول موضوعات حياة واقعية
- تحديد معلومات محددة باستخدام أدلة السياق والمفردات الأساسية
- التعرف على أصوات الـ /u:/ و /ʊ/ الطويلة والقصيرة

Reading

- Differentiate between natural and man-made resources in an informational text
- Identify facts, details, and main ideas in a short passage
- Answer Wh-questions and complete tasks based on reading

- التمييز بين الموارد الطبيعية وما صنع الإنسان في نص معلوماتي
- تحديد الحقائق والتفاصيل والأفكار الرئيسية في فقرة قصيرة
- الإجابة عن الأسئلة بأداة الاستفهام وإكمال المهام بناءً على القراءة

Writing

- Write a fact file
- Use modal verbs correctly (must, mustn't, should, shouldn't) in writing
- Plan and organize research using clear steps

- كتابة ملف حقائق
- استخدام الأفعال الناقصة بشكل صحيح (must, mustn't, should, shouldn't) في الكتابة
- تخطيط البحث وتنظيمه باستخدام خطوات واضحة

Lesson 1 Egypt: Past and Present

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Main Vocabulary

مفردات أساسية



granite
جرانيت



colored stones
أحجار ملونة



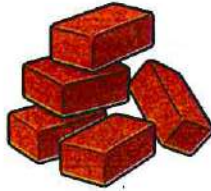
gold
ذهب



clay
طين/طمي



papyrus
ورق بردي



bricks
طوب



temple
معبد



amulet
تميمة

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

history	تاريخ	project	مشروع	stone	حجر
linen	قماش الكتان	wood	خشب	scroll	مخطوطة
buildings	مبانٍ	pyramids	أهرامات	statues	تماثيل
sculptures	منحوتات	flax	بذور الكتان	mummies	مومباوات
pots	أوانٍ	jars	جرار/برطمانات	culture	ثقافة
objects	أشياء	jewelry	مجوهرات	picture	صورة
thousands	آلاف	museum	متحف	The Ancient Egyptians المصريون القدماء	

**Adjectives** الصفات

cool	رائع	amazing	مذهل	soft	ناعم
huge	ضخم	natural	طبيعي	useful	مفيد
fascinating	مبهر	strong	قوي	interesting	مثير للاهتمام
small	صغير	unbelievable	لا يصدق/غير معقول	simple	بسيط

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
مضارع	ماضي	مضارع	ماضي
carve	carved	see	saw
ينحت/ينقش		يرى	
believe	believed	mean	meant
يصدق/يعتقد		يقصد	
protect	protected	wear	wore
يحمي		يرتدي	
last	lasted	has/have	had
يستمر/يدوم		يملك/لديه	

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

work on	يعمل على	read about	يقرأ عن
how long	كم من الوقت	just like	تمامًا مثل
made from	مصنوع من	Exactly!	بالضبط!

Definitions

تعريفات

material مادة	something used to make things	شيء ما يُستخدم لصنع الأشياء
survive ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة	to continue to exist for a long time	يستمر في الوجود لفترة طويلة
ancient عتيق	very old; from a long time ago	قديم جدًا؛ منذ زمن طويل
decorate يزين	to make something look nice or beautiful	أن يجعل شيئًا ما يبدو لطيفًا أو جميلًا
wrapped غلف/لف	covered something by putting material or cloth around it	غطى شيئًا ما بوضع مادة أو قطعة قماش حوله
modern حديث/عصري	from recent times; not old	من العصور الحديثة؛ ليست قديمة



(Conversation) main points

النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة

- Omar is working on a history project about Ancient Egyptian materials.
يعمل عُمر على مشروع تاريخي حول المواد الخام المصرية القديمة.
- The Ancient Egyptians used materials, like stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and gold.
استخدم المصريون القدماء مواد خام مثل الحجر، الطين، البردي، قماش الكتان، الخشب والذهب.
- Papyrus, stone, and linen are still used today.
لا يزال ورق البردي والحجر وقماش الكتان مُستخدمين حتى اليوم.
- There are statues made of granite.
توجد تماثيل مصنوعة من الجرانيت.
- The Ancient Egyptians used clay to make pots, jars, and bricks.
استخدم المصريون القدماء الطين لصنع الأواني والجرار والطوب.
- Both Omar and Nour agree that these materials are natural and strong.
يتفق كلٌّ من عُمر ونور على أن هذه المواد الخام طبيعية وقوية.
- They think that Ancient Egyptian culture is fascinating.
يعتقدان أن الثقافة المصرية القديمة مبهرة.

Conversation



Listen, look, and read:

S B page 56

استمع، انظر واقرأ:



Play Audio



Nour

1 Hey Omar! Are you working on the history project?

أهلاً يا عُمر! هل تعمل على مشروع التاريخ؟

2 Yes! I'm reading about materials the Ancient Egyptians used. It's so cool. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold!

نعم! أقرأ عن المواد الخام التي استخدمها المصريون القدماء. إنه رائع جداً. استخدموا الحجر والطين وورق البردي والكتان والخشب، وحتى الذهب!



3 That's amazing! I saw a picture of a papyrus scroll in a museum. It's unbelievable how long that material could survive.

هذا مذهل! رأيت صورة لمخطوطة ورق بردي في متحف. إنه غير معقول كم من الوقت استطاعت هذه المادة الخام أن تتجو.



I know! And some materials are still used today. Stone is used in modern buildings—just like they used it for pyramids and temples.

أعلم! وبعض المواد لا تزال تُستخدم حتى اليوم. يُستخدم الحجر في المباني الحديثة، تمامًا كما استخدموه في الأهرامات والمعابد.



And statues! I love how they carved huge statues from granite. We still use stone today for sculptures and buildings.

والتماثيل! أحب كيف نحتوا تماثيل ضخمة من الجرانيت. وما زلنا نستخدم الحجر اليوم في المنحوتات والمباني.



And linen! It's made from flax. Ancient Egyptians wore it every day—and even wrapped mummies in it.

والكتان! إنه مصنوع من بذور الكتان. ارتداه المصريون القدماء كل يوم، حتى إنهم لُفُّوا به المومياءات.



My grandma has a linen dress. It's soft, cool, and simple.

جَدَّتِي لديها فستان من الكتان. إنه ناعم، رائع، وبسيط.



Clay is another interesting one. They made pots, jars, bricks—and small statues and amulets too!

الطين مادة أخرى مثيرة للاهتمام. فقد صنعوا الأواني والجرار والطوب، و التماثيل الصغيرة والتماائم أيضًا



Amulets? You mean, like small objects people believed could protect them?

تماائم؟ هل تقصد أشياء صغيرة اعتقد الناس أنها تحميهم؟



Exactly! Some were shaped like animals. They used gold and small colorful stones to make jewelry.

بالضبط! بعضها كان شكّل على حيوانات. استخدموا الذهب والأحجار الصغيرة الملونة لصنع المجوهرات.



These materials are natural, strong, and useful. That's why they lasted thousands of years. Ancient Egyptian culture is really fascinating.

هذه المواد طبيعية، قوية، ومفيدة. ولهذا السبب دامت آلاف السنين. الحضارة المصرية القديمة مبهرة حقًا.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- 1 The is made from clay.
a. fire b. pot c. stone d. storm
- 2 The Ancient Egyptians used clay to make jars, bricks, and statues.
a. small b. big c. huge d. tiny
- 3 Amulets are small objects people believed could them.
a. sell b. stay c. protect d. leave
- 4 We still use today to make pots.
a. brick b. stone c. gold d. clay

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Workers used to build the house because they're strong.
a. plastic b. gold c. glass d. bricks
- 2 The Ancient Egyptians used for writing.
a. papyrus b. mummies c. jars d. pots
- 3 When I went to Aswan, I visited many ancient
a. boxes b. temples c. lemons d. chairs
- 4 I made the room look beautiful for the party. I it.
a. decorated b. loved c. closed d. played
- 5 She thinks that wearing a/an brings protection and good luck.
a. temple b. history c. amulet d. brick
- 6 Wood is a strong for making furniture.
a. project b. material c. place d. food
- 7 The gift was in red paper. The paper covered the whole gift!
a. used b. made c. shaped d. wrapped
- 8 To means to continue to exist for a long time.
a. carve b. mean c. survive d. decorate

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

fascinating – linen – modern – lasted

The Ancient Egyptians used many materials to make amazing things. These materials are natural, very strong, and useful. That's why many of them ⁽¹⁾ thousands of years. They used stone, clay, papyrus, ⁽²⁾, wood, colored stones, and even gold. It's unbelievable how long these materials could survive. Some materials are still used today like stone. Ancient Egyptian culture is really ⁽³⁾

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 working – Are – project? – on – you – the history

2 buildings. – used – in – Stone – modern – is

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 linen is made from flax

2 they made pots, jars bricks, and small statues.

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

"Materials in Ancient Egypt"

(gold – papyrus)



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

energy	طاقة	phones	تليفونات/هواتف	electricity	كهرباء
gas	غاز	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	wisely	بحكمة
nature	طبيعة	planet	كوكب	sunshine	أشعة الشمس
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	types	أنواع	oil	نפט
the Earth	كوكب الأرض	money	مال	devices	أجهزة
fridge	ثلاجة	size	مقاس	cooking	طبخ
fuel	وقود	biking	ركوب الدراجة	distance	مسافة
wasting	إهدار	change	تغير	heroes	أبطال
actions	أفعال	country	دولة	wind	رياح

Adjectives الصفات

endless	أبدي/بلا نهاية	daily	بصفة يومية	healthy	صحي
right	صحيح	clean	نظيف	short	قصير

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
charge يشحن	charged	come يأتي	came
save يوفر/يحفظ	saved	keep يُبقي/يحافظ على	kept
harm يؤدي	harmed	light يضيء	lit
close يغلق	closed		
cause يسبب	caused		
affect يؤثر	affected		

**Important expressions & Prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

turn off lights	يطفئ الأنوار	when not in use	عند عدم الاستخدام
make a big difference	يحدث فرق كبير	light our houses	يضيء منازلنا

Definitions

تعريفات

pollute يلوث	to make something dirty or unsafe, especially the air, water, or land أن يجعل شيئًا ما قذرًا أو غير آمن، وخاصة الهواء أو الماء أو الأرض
protect يحمي	caring for something so you don't make mistakes or cause harm الاهتمام بشيء ما حتى لا ترتكب أخطاء أو تتسبب في ضرر
climate المناخ	the usual weather in a place over a long time الطقس المعتاد في مكان ما لفترة طويلة

Energy is something we all need every day—to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones. In Egypt, we use electricity, gas, and solar power. But energy is not endless, so we must use it wisely. Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't pollute. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more solar panels saves money and helps the planet.



الطاقة شيء نحتاجه جميعًا كل يوم - لإضاءة منازلنا، والطهي، ومشاهدة التلفزيون، وشحن هواتفنا. في مصر، نستخدم الكهرباء والغاز والطاقة الشمسية. لكن الطاقة ليست بلا حدود، لذا يجب استخدامها بحكمة. بعض مصادر الطاقة تأتي من الطبيعة، مثل الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح، وهي طاقة نظيفة وغير ملوثة. تتمتع مصر بوفرة من أشعة الشمس، لذا فإن استخدام المزيد من الألواح الشمسية يوفر المال ويساعد الكوكب.

Other energy types, like oil and gas, can harm the Earth. We should save energy by turning off lights and devices when not in use, closing the fridge door quickly, and using the right size pot for cooking. Cars and buses use fuel which pollutes the air. Walking or biking short distances also saves energy and keeps us healthy.

أنواع الطاقة الأخرى، كالنفط والغاز، قد تلحق الضرر بالأرض. ينبغي علينا توفير الطاقة بإطفاء الأنوار والأجهزة عند عدم استخدامها، وإغلاق باب الثلاجة بسرعة، واستخدام قدر حجمه مناسب للطهي. تستهلك السيارات والحافلات وقودًا يلوّث الهواء. كما أن المشي أو ركوب الدراجات لمسافات قصيرة يوفر الطاقة ويحافظ على صحتنا.

Wasting energy causes climate change, which affects animals and their homes. Small daily actions can make a big difference. Together, we can protect our country and planet—we should all be Energy Heroes!

يُسبب هدر الطاقة تغير المناخ، مما يؤثر على الحيوانات ومواطنها. أفعال يومية صغيرة يمكن أن تحدث فرقًا كبيرًا. معًا، يمكننا حماية بلدنا وكوكبنا - علينا جميعًا أن نكون أبطالًا في مجال الطاقة!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The usual weather in a place over a long time is called
 a. planet b. climate c. energy d. panel
- 2 Loud noise can your ears.
 a. waste b. walk c. harm d. save
- 3 Our house uses solar power for
 a. electricity b. pyramid c. rubbish d. bike
- 4 Parents care for their children. They them.
 a. protect b. harm c. travel d. look

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

protect – devices – pollute – solar

We use energy every day in our lives. We need it to light homes, cook meals, watch TV, and charge ⁽¹⁾ In Egypt, we get energy from electricity, gas, and sunlight. Some energy isn't endless, so we must use it carefully. Natural energy like ⁽²⁾ and wind are clean and safe. They don't ⁽³⁾ the Earth. Using more solar panels helps the planet and saves money.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- we should all be Energy Heroes

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 What are energy types that can harm the Earth?

- 2 How is wasting energy dangerous?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Modal Verbs

الأفعال الناقصة

يجب/لا يجب must/mustn't

- We use **must** to say something is very important or a rule.
• نستخدم (must) بمعنى «يجب» لنقول إن شيئًا ما مهم جدًا أو قاعدة.
- We use **must + not (mustn't)** to say something is not allowed.
• نستخدم must + not (mustn't) بمعنى «لا يجب» لنقول إن شيئًا ما غير مسموح به.

Subject (فاعل) + **must/mustn't** + verb (infinitive) (مصدر الفعل) ...

Ex: – You **must** turn off the lights to save energy.



– You **mustn't** throw rubbish on the ground.



ينبغي/لا ينبغي should/shouldn't

- We use **should** to give advice or a good idea.
• نستخدم (should) بمعنى «ينبغي» لإعطاء نصيحة أو فكرة جيدة.
- We use **should + not (shouldn't)** to say something is not a good idea.
• نستخدم should + not (shouldn't) بمعنى «لا ينبغي» لنقول إن شيئًا ما ليس بفكرة جيدة.

Subject + **should/shouldn't** + verb (infinitive) ...

Ex: – You **should** walk to school if it's close.



– You **shouldn't** waste water when washing your hands.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 You take your umbrella. It's raining outside.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. should d. can't
- 2 Children be late for school.
a. must b. mustn't c. does d. is
- 3 We throw rubbish on the ground.
a. must b. should c. have d. mustn't
- 4 He eat too many sweets. He has a toothache.
a. has b. shouldn't c. had d. haven't
- 5 We should more solar panels.
a. used b. using c. uses d. use
- 6 You respect your parents.
a. am b. mustn't c. must d. does
- 7 We must to our teacher carefully.
a. listen b. listening c. listened d. listens
- 8 We walk short distances to save energy.
a. have b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 You (should) drive too fast. It's dangerous.
- 2 He must (feeds) his dog.
- 3 They (mustn't) study hard to pass their exam.
- 4 We (shouldn't) brush our teeth before going to bed.
- 5 We should (turning) off devices when not in use.
- 6 The baby (must) drink soda.
- 7 He (shouldn't) clean his room. It's messy.
- 8 Students (mustn't) wear a uniform at school.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Energy is needed daily in our lives. We need it for lighting, cooking, and using devices. In Egypt, we use electricity, gas, and solar power. Clean energy, like solar and wind, is better for the planet. It saves money and helps the planet. We should all be energy heroes and protect our planet. To save energy, we should turn off unused devices, close the fridge door quickly, and walk or bike short distances. Saving energy helps fight climate change which affects animals' homes. Small actions every day can make a big difference.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text is about
 a. devices b. sun c. energy d. school
- 2 The underlined verb "bike" means to travel or move by
 a. bicycle b. car c. bus d. plane

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 What do we need energy for?

- 4 How can clean energy help us?

- 5 What should we do to save energy?

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 We (shouldn't) be quiet in the library.
- 2 We shouldn't (eating) too much junk food.

Lesson 3 (A) Gifts from Under the Ground

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



gold
ذهب



iron
حديد



rock
صخر

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

ground	أرض	minerals	معادن	country	بلد
steel	حديد/فولاذ	metal	معدن	liquid	سائل
lights	الأنوار	soil	تربة	queens	ملكات
Eastern Desert	الصحراء الشرقية	resources	موارد	kings	ملوك
Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء		

Adjectives الصفات

valuable	قِيم	important	مهم/هام	deep	عميق
beautiful	جميل	shiny	لامع	different	مختلف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
call يُسمَّى	called	find يجد	found
use يستخدم	used	sell يبيع	sold
contain يحتوي	contained	bring يُحضِر	brought
help يساعد	helped	grow ينمو	grew
develop يطور	developed	build يبني	built
		make يصنع	made



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

make electricity

يولد الكهرباء

build a strong future

يبنى مستقبلًا قويًا

Egypt has many valuable things under the ground. We call these things minerals. They are very important for our country.

لدى مصر أشياء قيّمة كثيرة تحت الأرض. نُسَمِّي هذه الأشياء معادن، وهي بالغة الأهمية لبلدنا.

Egypt has a lot of oil, rocks, and metals. We find oil deep under the ground, especially in the Western Desert and



Sinai. Oil is a black liquid. Egypt sells oil to other countries. This brings money to Egypt. Egypt also has a lot of natural gas that we can use for cooking, heating, and making electricity for lights and TVs.

تمتلك مصر الكثير من النفط والصخور والمعادن. نجد النفط في أعماق الأرض، وخاصةً في الصحراء الغربية وسيناء. النفط سائل أسود. تباع مصر النفط لدول أخرى، وهذا يُدرُّ عليها المال. كما تمتلك مصر كميات كبيرة من الغاز الطبيعي الذي يُمكن استخدامه في الطهي والتدفئة، وفي توليد الكهرباء للإضاءة وأجهزة التلفزيون.

Gold is a beautiful, yellow, shiny metal. Long ago, Ancient Egyptians used gold to make beautiful jewelry for kings and queens. Today, Egypt still finds gold in the Eastern Desert. Also, Egypt has iron in the Eastern Desert. Iron is a strong metal. We use iron to make steel. We use it to build big buildings and cars.

الذهب معدن جميل، أصفر، لامع. منذ وقت طويل، استخدم المصريون القدماء الذهب لصنع مجوهرات فاخرة للملوك والملكات. واليوم، لا تزال مصر تجد الذهب في الصحراء الشرقية. كما يوجد الحديد في الصحراء الشرقية أيضًا. الحديد معدن قوي. نستخدمه في صناعة الفولاذ، ونستخدمه في بناء المباني الكبيرة والسيارات.

The soil in Egypt contains different kinds of minerals which help plants grow big and strong. These natural resources help Egypt grow and develop. By using these minerals wisely, Egypt can build a strong future for everyone.

تحتوي التربة في مصر على أنواع مختلفة من المعادن التي تُساعد النباتات على النمو بقوة. هذه الموارد الطبيعية تُساعد مصر على النمو والتطور. باستخدام هذه المعادن بحكمة، يُمكن لمصر بناء مستقبل قوي للجميع.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Ancient Egyptians made many things, like jewelry.
a. valuable b. deep c. cheap d. right
- 2 Without electricity, we can't use
a. liquid b. steel c. lights d. metal
- 3 We planted the seeds in the to grow.
a. soil b. flowers c. leaves d. branches
- 4 is a black liquid found under the ground.
a. Oil b. Metal c. Gold d. Iron

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ واكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

metal – resources – heating – desert

Egypt has many valuable minerals under the ground, like oil, gas, gold, and iron. Oil brings money to Egypt. Natural gas is used for cooking, ⁽¹⁾, and making electricity. Gold was used in Ancient Egypt to make beautiful jewelry and is still found today. Iron is a strong ⁽²⁾, so Egyptians use it to build strong things, like cars and buildings. These natural ⁽³⁾ help Egypt grow and develop.

3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- gold is a beautiful yellow, shiny metal.

4 Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 Where is gold found in Egypt today?
.....
- 2 Why is selling oil to other countries important for Egypt?
.....

B Pronunciation

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر ورّدّد:



Play Audio

- The long "oo" sound is when your mouth is rounded, and the sound is long.
الصوت الطويل "oo" هو عندما يكون فمك مستديرًا، والصوت طويلًا.
- The short "oo" sound is when your mouth is more relaxed, and the sound is shorter.
الصوت القصير "oo" هو عندما يكون فمك أكثر استرخاء، والصوت أقصر.

Long "oo" /u:/



moon

قمر



spoon

ملعقة

Short "oo" /ʊ/



wood

خشب



book

كتاب



good

جيد/ لذيذ



foot

قدم

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

/u:/ sound

zoo	حديقة حيوانات	tooth	سنّة
boot	حذاء طويل الرقبة	food	طعام
group	مجموعة	school	مدرسة

/ʊ/ sound

hook	خُطّاف	look	ينظر
------	--------	------	------

Tryout



Say and circle the word with the different (oo) sound:

قُل وضع دائرة حول الكلمة ذات صوت الـ (oo) المختلف:

- 1 wood – book – hook – zoo
- 2 group – good – school – moon
- 3 look – boot – spoon – tooth

3. look

2. good

1. zoo

Answers:

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed is an Egyptian boy. He lives in Cairo. Ahmed is learning about Egypt's valuable minerals under the ground. He knows these minerals are very important for his country. Egypt has a lot of oil, rocks, and metals. Ahmed learned that oil is found deep under the ground, especially in the Western Desert and Sinai. Oil is a black liquid, and Egypt sells it to other countries, which brings money. He also learned about natural gas, which is used for cooking, heating, and electricity. Gold is a beautiful yellow metal that Egypt finds in the Eastern Desert. These minerals help Egypt grow.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Ahmed is learning about Egypt's valuable
 a. food b. traditions c. minerals d. people
- 2 Oil is found deep under the
 a. ground b. cloud c. sea d. mountain

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 Which desert has oil in Egypt?

- 4 What is natural gas used for?

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جملًا:

- 1 our country. – Minerals – very – are – important – for

- 2 soil – different – The – in Egypt – minerals. – contains

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

facts	حقائق	resources	موارد	notebook	دفتر
mirrors	مرايا	Lake Nasser	بحيرة ناصر	factories	مصانع
newspapers	صحف/جرائد	tips	نصائح	cloth bags	أكياس قماش
ideas	أفكار	information	معلومات	drought	جفاف
irrigation	ري	cities	مدن	grains	حبوب
High Dam	السد العالي	floods	فيضانات	crops	محاصيل
officially	بشكل رسمي	river	نهر	school supplies	مستلزمات مدرسية

Adjectives الصفات

accurate	دقيق	man-made	من صنع الإنسان	helpful	مساعد/مفيد
dangerous	خطير	regular	منتظم	large	كبير

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
print يطبع	printed	write يكتب	wrote
mix يخلط	mixed	build يبني	built
create يُنشئ/يبدع	created	give يعطي	gave
complete يُكْمِل/ينهي	completed	draw يرسم	drew
dry يجفف	dried	understand يفهم	understood
recycle يعيد التدوير	recycled	read يقرأ	read
process يعالج	processed	grow ينمي/يزرع	grew
cross يَعبُر	crossed	send يرسل	sent
reuse يعيد استخدام	reused	hold يحتوي/يحتضن	held



Important expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

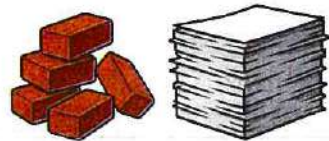
do a research project	يُجري مشروعًا بحثيًا	used for	يُستخدم من أجل/لغرض
across Egypt	عبر أنحاء مصر	used in	يُستخدم في
in many ways	بطرق مختلفة	instead of	بدلاً من
solve problems	يحل مشكلات	made from	مصنوع من
during the year	خلال السنة	all year	طوال العام
make sure	يتأكد	search the internet	يبحث على الإنترنت



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Hi! I'm Omar, and I'm doing a research project about man-made resources for my English class. I started by reading a book and searching the internet with my dad. I wrote facts in my notebook and printed pictures to help explain.



مرحباً! أنا عمر، وأجري مشروعًا بحثيًا حول الموارد من صنع الإنسان لصف اللغة الإنجليزية. بدأت بقراءة كتاب والبحث على الإنترنت مع والدي. كتبت حقائق في دفترتي وطبعْتُ صورًا للمساعدة في الشرح.

Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school supplies. Glass is made from sand and used in windows, mirrors, and cups. One interesting resource I learned about is bricks, made by mixing clay and water, then dried or baked. They are used to build houses, schools, and walls.

الموارد من صنع الإنسان هي أشياء يصنعها الإنسان باستخدام مواد خام طبيعية. على سبيل المثال، يُصنع البلاستيك من النفط ويُستخدم في صناعة الزجاجات والألعاب والمستلزمات المدرسية. أما الزجاج فيُصنع من الرمل ويُستخدم في النوافذ والمرابا والأكواب. واحد من الموارد الشيقة التي تعرفت عليها هي الطوب، الذي يُصنع بخلط الطين والماء، ثم يُجفف أو يُخبز. ويُستخدم في بناء المنازل والمدارس والجدران.

Paper is made from trees and processed in factories for writing and reading. People also recycle paper to make notebooks and newspapers.

يُصنع الورق من الأشجار ويُعالج في المصانع للكتابة والقراءة. كما يُعيد الناس تدوير الورق لصنع الدفاتر والصحف.



To complete my project, I drew pictures of each resource and shared helpful tips, such as recycling plastic, reusing paper, and using cloth bags instead of plastic ones. Doing research was an important part of my work because it helped me understand new ideas, find accurate information, and learn more about the world around me.

لإكمال مشروعي، رسمت صورًا لكل مورد وشاركتُ نصائح مفيدة، مثل إعادة تدوير البلاستيك، وإعادة استخدام الورق، واستخدام الأكياس القماشية بدلًا من البلاستيكية. إجراء البحث كان جزءًا أساسيًا من عملي، لأنه ساعدني على فهم أفكار جديدة، وإيجاد معلومات دقيقة، ومعرفة المزيد عن العالم من حولي.

Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح التالية:

Tips for doing research

نصائح لعمل بحث



- Choose your topic. اختر موضوعك.
- Ex:** Man-Made Resources
- Ask simple questions: What is it? Where does it come from? etc. اطرح أسئلة بسيطة: ما هو؟ من أين أتى؟ إلخ.
- Use different sources like: school book, search safe websites, or ask an adult. استخدم مصادر مختلفة مثل: الكتاب المدرسي، أو ابحث في مواقع إلكترونية آمنة، أو اسأل شخصًا بالغًا.
- Write short notes in your own words. اكتب ملاحظات قصيرة بكلماتك الخاصة.
- Organize your ideas. نظم أفكارك.
- Add pictures or drawings. أضف صورًا أو رسومات.
- Check spelling, grammar, and punctuation mistakes. تحقق من كتابتك بحثًا عن أي أخطاء في التهجئة، لغوية، وفي علامات الترقيم.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Omar did his project alone without any help. ()
- 2 Bricks are made by mixing clay and water. ()
- 3 Glass is made from oil and used to make toys. ()
- 4 People can recycle paper to make notebooks and newspapers. ()
- 5 Omar used pictures and shared tips in his project. ()

Answers:

5. (✓)

4. (✓)

3. (X)

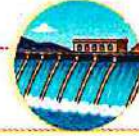
2. (✓)

1. (X)



The High Dam

السد العالي



What is the High Dam?

ما هو السد العالي؟

The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It holds a large lake called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from flooding and keeps water for people to use during the year.

السد العالي هو جدار ضخم يَعبُر نهر النيل في أسوان، مصر. يحتضن بحيرة كبيرة تُسمى بحيرة ناصر. يمنع السد فيضان النهر ويحفظ الماء للناس خلال العام.

Why did Egyptians build it?

لماذا بناه المصريون؟

They built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and drought. They also wanted to give people clean electricity and help farmers grow more crops with regular water.

بنوا السد العالي لحل مشكلات الفيضانات والجفاف. كما أرادوا تزويد الناس بالكهرباء النظيفة ومساعدة المزارعين على زراعة المزيد من المحاصيل باستخدام مياه منتظمة.

When did Egyptians build it?

متى بناه المصريون؟

Egyptians built the High Dam in Aswan between 1960 and 1970. It was officially completed and opened in 1970. It took around ten years to build. Now, it helps Egypt with water and electricity every day.

بنى المصريون السد العالي في أسوان بين عامي 1960 و1970. واكتمل بناؤه رسميًا وافتتح عام 1970. واستغرق بناؤه حوالي عشر سنوات. وهو الآن يساعد مصر بالمياه والكهرباء كل يوم.

How does the High Dam help people?

كيف يساعد السد العالي الناس؟

The High Dam helps people in many ways. Farmers use the water for irrigation, to grow vegetables, fruits, and grains all year. The dam also sends electricity to houses, schools, hospitals, and factories across Egypt. It protects cities from dangerous floods, and it makes sure people have water even when the river is low.

يساعد السد العالي الناس بطرق عديدة. يستخدم المزارعون مياهه للري، ولزراعة الخضراوات والفواكه والحبوب على مدار العام. كما يرسل السد الكهرباء للمنازل والمدارس والمستشفيات والمصانع في جميع أنحاء مصر بالكهرباء. ويحمي المدن من الفيضانات الخطيرة، ويؤكد من حصول الناس على المياه حتى عندما يكون النهر منخفضًا.



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح التالية:

Tips for making a fact file

نصائح لصنع ملف حقائق



- Ask and answer questions. اطرح الأسئلة وأجب عنها.
- Find key facts. اعثر على حقائق أساسية.
- Write short sentences. اكتب جملًا قصيرة.
- Add a title and sub-headings. أضف عنوانًا وعناوين فرعية.
- Include pictures. قم بتضمين صور.
- Check spelling and grammar. تأكد من الأخطاء الإملائية واللغوية.

Lessons 4&5

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Farmers grow, like wheat and corn in their fields.
a. crops b. walls c. tips d. paper
- 2 The teacher the homework for the students.
a. built b. printed c. dried d. baked
- 3 Farmers use the water of the dam for
a. problems b. drought c. flooding d. irrigation

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جملًا:

- 1 wrote – I – in – notebook. – my – facts
- 2 High – wall. – The – a huge – Dam – is

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- 1 Why did egyptians build the High Dam
- 2 i drew pictures of each resource

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

"A man-made resource"

(made from – natural materials)

Unit 4 Review

Vocabulary

granite	جرانيت	temple	معبد	amulet	تميمة
bricks	طوب	papyrus	ورق بردي	mummies	موميאות
flax	بذور الكتان	sculptures	منحوتات	minerals	معادن
money	مال	devices	أجهزة	foot	قدم
resources	موارد	facts	حقائق	iron	حديد
spoon	ملعقة	moon	قمر	tips	نصائح
good	جيد/لذيذ	drought	جفاف	grains	حبوب
wood	خشب	crops	محاصيل	book	كتاب
gold	ذهب	colored stones	أحجار ملونة	clay	طين/طمي

Language

Modal Verbs

- We use **must** to say something is very important or a rule.
• نستخدم (must) بمعنى «يجب» لنقول إن شيئاً ما مهم جداً أو قاعدة.
- We use **must + not (mustn't)** to say something is not allowed.
• نستخدم must + not (mustn't) بمعنى «لا يجب» لنقول إن شيئاً ما غير مسموح به.

Subject + **must/mustn't** + verb (infinitive) ...

- Ex:** – You **must** turn off the lights to save energy.
– You **mustn't** throw rubbish on the ground.

- We use **should** to give advice or a good idea.
• نستخدم (should) بمعنى «ينبغي» لإعطاء نصيحة أو فكرة جيدة.
- We use **should + not (shouldn't)** to say something is not a good idea.
• نستخدم should + not (shouldn't) بمعنى «لا ينبغي» لنقول إن شيئاً ما ليس بفكرة جيدة.

Subject + **should/shouldn't** + verb (infinitive) ...

- Ex:** – You **should** walk to school if it's close.
– You **shouldn't** waste water when washing your hands.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 Egypt: Past and Present

- Nour and Omar are talking about Omar's history project on Ancient Egyptian materials.
يتحدث نور وعمر عن مشروع عُمر التاريخي حول المواد المصرية القديمة.
- Omar says they used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold.
يقول عُمر إنهم استخدموا الحجر والطين وورق البردي والكتان والخشب وحتى الذهب.
- Stone and granite were used in buildings and statues, and are still used today.
تم استخدام الحجر والجرانيت في المباني والتماثيل، ولا يزالان يُستخدمان حتى اليوم.
- Linen was used for clothing and wrapping mummies.
استُخدم الكتان في الملابس وتغليف المومياوات.
- Clay was used to make pots, bricks, and amulets.
استُخدم الطين في صنع الأواني والطوب والتماثيل.
- Gold and colorful stones were used to make jewelry.
استُخدم الذهب والأحجار الملونة في صناعة المجوهرات.

Lesson 3 Gifts from Under the Ground

- Egypt has many valuable minerals under the ground.
تمتلك مصر العديد من المعادن الثمينة تحت الأرض.
- Oil is found deep underground in the Western Desert and Sinai.
يتم العثور على النفط في أعماق الأرض في الصحراء الغربية وسيناء.
- Egypt sells oil to other countries to earn money.
تبيع مصر النفط لدول أخرى لكسب المال.
- Natural gas is used for cooking, heating, and making electricity.
يُستخدم الغاز الطبيعي في الطهي والتدفئة وتوليد الكهرباء.
- Gold is found in the Eastern Desert. It was used to make jewelry for kings and queens.
يُعثَر على الذهب في الصحراء الشرقية. وكان يُستخدم في صناعة المجوهرات للملوك والملكات.
- Iron is a strong metal used to make steel for buildings and cars.
الحديد معدن قوي يُستخدم في صناعة الفولاذ للمباني والسيارات.

Lessons 4&5 Man-Made Resources/Think and Create

- The High Dam is a large wall built across the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt.
السد العالي جدار ضخم بُني عبر نهر النيل في أسوان، مصر.
- It stops the river from flooding and keeps water for people.
يمنع السد فيضان النهر ويحفظ الماء للناس.
- It was built to solve flooding and drought problems and provide clean electricity.
بُني السد لحل مشكلات الفيضانات والجفاف وتوفير كهرباء نظيفة.
- It was officially completed and opened in 1970.
تم إنهاؤه وافتتاحه رسميًا في 1970.
- It protects cities from dangerous floods and farmers use the water for irrigation.
يحمي المدن من الفيضانات الخطيرة والمزارعون يستخدمون المياه للري.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

أحجار مُلوّنة	جرائيت
ذهب	طين
ورق بردي	طوب
معبد	تميمة
بنجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة	مادة
حديث/عصري	عتيق
يزين	غُلف/لَفّ
منحوتات	قماش الكتان

Lesson (2)

يحمي	يَلوِّث
كهرباء	المناخ
أجهزة	طاقة شمسية
قنوات	وقود
نפט	غاز

Lesson (3)

ذهب	ملعقة
حديد/فولاذ	أنوار
حجر	خشب
بترول	تدفئة
سائل	قدم
مجوهرات	جيد/لذيذ

Lessons (4&5)

مرايا	دقيق
السد العالي	موارد
فيضانات	ري



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
carve		keep	
last		come	
wear		reuse	
mean		develop	
process		grow	
recycle		bring	
believe		sell	
protect		use	
build		contain	
save		dry	
harm		create	
close		understand	
cause		write	
affect		print	



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

“Energy”

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

Nouns

1. nature
2. lights
3. devices

Verbs

1. help
2. pollute
3. save

Others

1. solar
2. clean
3. short

2 Form your sentences.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكلمة الجملة)

1. Energy helps us cook, use lights, and charge phones.
2. Solar energy is clean and doesn't pollute the planet.
3. We should save energy by turning off devices and walking short distances.
4. Saving energy helps nature, animals, and people.

3 Write your paragraph.

Energy helps us cook, use lights, and charge phones. In Egypt, we use gas, electricity, and solar power. Solar energy is clean and doesn't pollute the planet. But oil and gas can hurt the Earth. We should save energy by turning off devices and walking short distances. Saving energy helps nature, animals, and people.

اكتب فقرتك.

اكتب بنفسك! Write it yourself!

“The High Dam”

Nouns

1.
2.
3.

Verbs

1.
2.
3.

Others

1.
2.
3.

Your sentences

1.
2.
3.
4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

Materials in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians used materials that were strong and useful. They built pyramids and statues from stone. They wrote on papyrus and wore clothes made of linen. Clay was used to make pots and small statues. They carved huge statues from granite. The materials they used lasted a very long time.



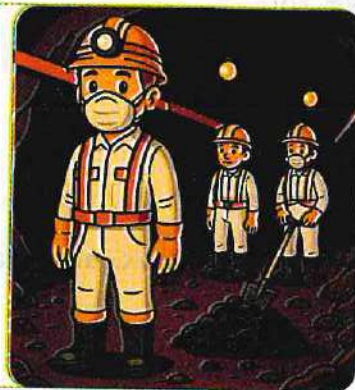
Energy

We use energy every day to light our homes and charge our phones. Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind. These energy types are clean and don't pollute the planet. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so we can use more solar panels. Other energy types, like oil and gas, can harm the Earth.



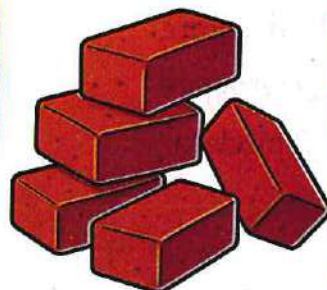
Egyptian minerals

Egypt has many valuable minerals under the ground. Minerals are oil, natural gas, gold, and iron. There is oil deep under the ground in the Western Desert and Sinai. There is gold and iron in the Eastern Desert. The soil in Egypt contains minerals which help plants develop. By using these minerals wisely, Egypt can build a strong future.



Man-made resources

Man-made resources are things people make from natural materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and is used for bottles and toys. Glass comes from sand. Bricks are made from clay and used to build houses. Paper is made from trees. Recycling helps us use man-made resources wisely and protect the Earth.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

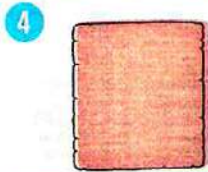
انظر واكتب:

1 Look and write:













2 Complete the following sentences with (must/mustn't):

أكمل الجمل التالية بـ (mustn't/must):

- 1 You cross the street when the light is red.
- 2 We wear a uniform at school.
- 3 You touch electrical wires.
- 4 You listen to the teacher carefully.

3 Read, think, and match:

اقرأ، فكّر وصل:

- 1 material
- 2 survive
- 3 ancient
- 4 decorate
- 5 wrapped
- 6 modern

- a very old; from a long time ago
- b from recent times; not old
- c something used to make things
- d covered something by putting material or cloth around it
- e to make something look nice or beautiful
- f to continue to exist for a long time

Test on unit (4)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The High Dam in is a huge wall across the Nile River.

- a. Cairo b. Alexandria c. Aswan d. Tanta

2. It helps stop and stores water for the whole year.

- a. drought b. flooding c. ideas d. life

3. The dam also helps farmers grow and protects cities.

- a. crops b. books c. homes d. schools

4. It sends to homes, hospitals, and schools.

- a. letters b. water c. electricity d. information

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians used linen to mummies.

- a. wrap b. eat c. carve d. weave

2. We have solar panels at our home to get energy from the

- a. wind b. sea c. sun d. sand

3. Farmers use to water their crops every day.

- a. research b. information c. irrigation d. fridge



3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

electricity – minerals – resources – Western

Egypt has important minerals like oil, gas, gold, and iron. Oil is found under the ground in places like the ⁽¹⁾ Desert and Sinai. It is sold to other countries to bring money. Natural gas is used for cooking and making ⁽²⁾ Gold is used for jewelry, and iron is used to make steel. Egypt uses its ⁽³⁾ to grow and develop.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

The Ancient Egyptians used many materials. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and gold. These materials were strong and useful. They built pyramids and temples with stone. They carved statues from granite. They also used linen to wrap mummies. Today, we still use some of these materials. Stone is used in buildings. Linen is used for clothes. Clay is used for pots and bricks. These natural materials lasted a long time. They connect the past with the present. They show how smart the Ancient Egyptians were. We still learn from them today.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These materials were strong and
a. weak b. awful c. dangerous d. useful
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the
a. materials b. Ancient Egyptians
c. statues d. buildings

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did the Ancient Egyptians build?
.....
4. How do we still use some of these materials today?
.....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. comes – Some – from – nature. – energy

.....

2. paper – make – recycle – People – notebooks. – to

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You (mustn't) wear a uniform at school.

2. We should (turned) off the lights to save energy.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. wasting energy causes climate change

.....

2. bricks are used to build houses schools, and walls.

.....

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

8

"Glass"

(made from – used in)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Practice

on unit (4)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

flooding – huge – irrigation – Dam – electricity

Dina : What's your project about, Magda?

Magda: It's about the High ⁽¹⁾

Dina : I see. It's a ⁽²⁾ wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan.

Magda: Yes. It stops the river from ⁽³⁾

Dina : It also gives people clean ⁽⁴⁾ and helps farmers grow more crops.

Magda: Farmers use this water for ⁽⁵⁾, so they can grow crops all year.

2 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. linen – clay – strong – granite (.....)

2. iron – gold – oil – wall (.....)

3. colored – ancient – interesting – energy (.....)

4. modern – decorate – build – make (.....)

5. Nour – Omar – history – Amr (.....)

3 Reorder:

1. the High Dam – Egyptians – in – Aswan. – built

2. used – Ancient Egyptians – gold – jewelry. – to make

3. energy – We – use – wisely. – must

4. made – trees. – is – Paper – from

5. is – interesting – Clay – an – material.

5

Unit

Made in Egypt

GRAND EGYPTIAN MUSEUM

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Talk about important places and projects in Egypt
- Express opinions about modern cities and clean energy
- Describe visits to museums or tourist places in Egypt

- التحدث عن الأماكن والمشروعات المهمة في مصر
- التعبير عن الرأي حول المدن الحديثة والطاقة النظيفة
- وصف زيارات للمتاحف أو الأماكن السياحية في مصر

Listening

- Recognize specific information about Egyptian places and projects
- Identify main ideas in short descriptions of cities
- Differentiate between the final sounds /d/, /t/, and /Id/ in regular past simple verbs

- التعرف على معلومات محددة حول الأماكن والمشروعات المصرية
- تحديد الأفكار الرئيسية في الأوصاف المختصرة للمدن
- التمييز بين الأصوات النهائية /d/ و /t/ و /Id/ في أفعال الماضي البسيط المنتظم

Reading

- Recognize Egypt's modern and historical projects
- Distinguish between facts and opinions-based texts
- Identify specific information related to a reading text

- التعرف على مشاريع مصر الحديثة والتاريخية
- التمييز بين الحقائق والآراء في النصوص القائمة على الحقائق والآراء
- تحديد معلومات محددة تتعلق بنص قراءة

Writing

- Use past simple in affirmative & negative forms in meaningful sentences
- Write a paragraph to express an opinion with reasons and examples
- Create a display board about an object in the Grand Egyptian Museum

- استخدام الماضي البسيط في صيغته الإيجابية والسلبية في جمل ذات معنى
- كتابة فقرة للتعبير عن رأي مع ذكر الأسباب والأمثلة
- إنشاء لوحة عرض لقطعة أثرية في المتحف المصري الكبير

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

Main Vocabulary

مفردات أساسية



passport

جواز سفر



luggage

أمتعة/حقائب سفر



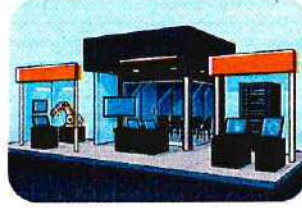
souvenir

تذكّار



brochure

كتيّب/نشرة



exhibition

معرض



travel plan

خطة سفر



information desk

مكتب الاستعلامات



guided tour

جولة إرشادية

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية



fly

يطير



pack

يحزم/يجهز



book

يحجز



board

تصعدان على متن طائرة/تستقلان



Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

pyramids	أهرامات	temples	معابد	pharaohs	فراعنة
stories	قصص	history	تاريخ	tourists	سياح
countries	بلاد	wonders	عجائب	land	أرض
questions	أسئلة	spot	بقعة/موقع	visitors	زوار
museum	متحف	Giza	الجيزة	story	قصة
statues	تماثيل	jewelry	مجوهرات	tools	أدوات
mummies	مومياءات	Solar Boat	القارب الشمسي	King Khufu	الملك خوفو
objects	أشياء	entrance	مدخل	technology	تكنولوجيا
shows	عروض	building	مبنى	photos	صور
knowledge	معرفة	memories	ذكريات	screens	شاشات

Adjectives الصفات

the oldest	أقدم	amazing	مذهل	unusual	غير عادي
the newest	أحدث	exciting	مثير	modern	عصري
strong	قوي	real	واقعي	special	خاص/مميز
smart	ذكي	fun	ممتع	golden	ذهبي
ancient	قديم/أثري	wonderful	رائع/عظيم	great	عظيم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
explore يستكشف	explored	stand يقف	stood
help يساعد	helped	build يبني	built
visit يزور	visited	see يرى	saw
live يعيش	lived	tell يخبر/يحكي	told
finish يُنهي	finished	leave يغادر	left
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	show يعرض	showed
ask يسأل	asked		
use يستخدم	used		
learn يتعلم	learned		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

stand near	يقع بالقرب من	took almost + time	استغرق تقريبًا + وقت
to the end of the time of	حتى نهاية عصر	belonged to	انتمى إلى
come alive	تحيا	get help	يحصل على المساعدة
from the beginning	من البداية	in one trip	في رحلة واحدة
in every corner	في كل زاوية	work on	العمل على

(Reading) main points

النقاط الأساسية في القراءة

- Egypt is one of the oldest countries. It has pyramids, ancient temples, and strong pharaohs. مصر هي واحدة من أقدم الدول. إنها تحتوي على أهرامات، معابد قديمة، وفراعنة أقوياء.
- Tourists visit Egypt every year to explore its history and wonders every year. يزور السياح مصر كل عام لاستكشاف تاريخها وعجائبها.
- The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a new and exciting place near the Pyramids in Giza. المتحف المصري الكبير هو مكان جديد ومثير يقع بالقرب من الأهرامات في الجيزة.
- The museum took almost 20 years to finish. It shows both ancient and modern Egypt. استغرق بناء المتحف ما يقرب من 20 عامًا حتى ينتهي. هو يعرض مصر القديمة والحديثة.
- Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and King Khufu's Solar Boat. يمكن للزوار رؤية التماثيل والمجوهرات الذهبية والأدوات والمومياوات الحقيقية وقارب الملك خوفو الشمسي.
- These objects tell the story of Egypt from the beginning to the end of the time of the pharaohs. تحكي هذه الأشياء قصة مصر من البداية حتى نهاية عصر الفراعنة.
- There is an information desk at the entrance for help, and the museum uses smart screens and amazing shows. يوجد مكتب استعلامات عند المدخل للمساعدة، ويستخدم المتحف شاشات ذكية وعروضًا مذهلة.
- The museum is not just a building. It tells Egypt's story. المتحف ليس مجرد مبنى. إنه يحكي قصة مصر.
- Visitors leave with knowledge, photos, and memories. يغادر الزوار ومعهم معرفة، صور، وذكريات.



Play Audio

Listen, look, and read:

S B

page 71

استمع، انظر واقرأ:

المتحف المصري الكبير The Grand Egyptian Museum

Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world. It has pyramids, ancient temples, strong pharaohs, and amazing stories from history. Each year, tourists from many countries come to explore the wonders of this unusual land. In Egypt, history lives in every corner.



مصر من أقدم الدول في العالم. بها أهرامات، ومعابد قديمة، وفراغة أقوياء وقصص مذهشة من التاريخ. كل عام، يأتي السائحون من دول كثيرة لاستكشاف عجائب هذه الأرض غير عادية. في مصر، يعيش التاريخ في كل زاوية.

One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM). Work on the museum took almost 20 years to finish. It stands near the Pyramids in Giza, the museum was built in this spot so visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip.

أحد أحدث وأكثر الأماكن إثارة التي يمكن زيارتها هو المتحف المصري الكبير. استغرق العمل في المتحف ما يقرب من 20 عامًا حتى ينتهي. يقع بالقرب من الأهرامات في الجيزة، وقد تم بناء المتحف في هذا الموقع حتى يتمكن الزوار من الاستمتاع بكل من مصر القديمة والحديثة في رحلة واحدة.

Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and even the Solar Boat that belonged to King Khufu. The objects are shown in a special way that tells the story of Egypt from the beginning to the end of the time of the pharaohs.

يمكن للزوار رؤية تماثيل، ومجوهرات ذهبية، وأدوات، ومومياءات حقيقية، وحتى القارب الشمسي الذي كان ينتمي إلى الملك خوفو. تُعرض هذه الأشياء بطريقة خاصة تحكي قصة مصر من البداية حتى نهاية عصر الفراعنة.

At the entrance, there is an information desk where visitors can ask questions or get help. The museum also uses modern technology, like smart screens and amazing shows, to help people learn in a fun way.

عند المدخل، يوجد مكتب استعلامات يمكن للزوار أن يطرحوا فيها أسئلتهم أو يحصلوا على المساعدة. كما يستخدم المتحف التكنولوجيا الحديثة، مثل الشاشات الذكية والعروض المذهلة، لمساعدة الناس على التعلم بطريقة ممتعة.

The Grand Egyptian Museum is not just a building; it is a place where Egypt's story comes alive. Every visitor leaves with new knowledge, great photos, and wonderful memories.

المتحف المصري الكبير ليس مجرد مبنى؛ إنه المكان الذي تحيا فيه قصة مصر. يغادر كل زائر معه معرفة جديدة، وصور عظيمة، وذكريات رائعة.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- 1 The Grand Egyptian is the newest place to visit in Egypt.
a. Park b. Museum c. Tower d. Station
- 2 The visitors can enjoy both and modern Egypt.
a. ancient b. new c. real d. bad
- 3 The Boat belonged to King Khufu.
a. Moon b. Sun c. Star d. Solar
- 4 The museum has an information
a. room b. land c. screen d. desk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Egypt is one of the oldest in the world.
a. houses b. cities c. countries d. projects
- 2 The cat likes to sit in this next to the chair.
a. wall b. corner c. street d. history
- 3 The information desk is at the of the mall.
a. entrance b. tool c. house d. bathroom
- 4 I saw a movie about It was very scary.
a. flowers b. mummies c. jewelry d. tools
- 5 I love gold I always wear it.
a. jewelry b. wonder c. desk d. pharaoh
- 6 The students use screens to learn in the classroom.
a. smart b. happy c. true d. golden
- 7 Many visit the Pyramids of Giza.
a. objects b. countries c. wonders d. tourists
- 8 The museum shows objects from the time of the
a. stories b. temples c. pharaohs d. statues

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

shows – objects – statues – tourist

The Grand Egyptian Museum is a new museum in Egypt near the Pyramids of Giza. It took 20 years to build. Visitors can see ⁽¹⁾....., golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and King Khufu's Solar Boat. These ⁽²⁾..... tell Egypt's story from the time of the pharaohs. At the entrance, there is an information desk for help. The museum uses smart screens and amazing ⁽³⁾..... to make learning fun.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 one – the – Egypt – countries. – is – of – oldest2 technology. – The – uses – museum – modern**3 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 the museum stands near the Pyramids in giza.

2 every visitor leaves with new knowledge

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

"A visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum"

- When did you visit it?
- What did you see there?

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



sea

بحر



beach

شاطئ



cable car

تلفريك



mountain

جبل

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

plan	خطة	crowding	ازدحام	cities	مدن
air	هواء	views	مناظر	water park	حديقة مائية
abroad	من الخارج	education	تعليم	science	علوم
university	جامعة	students	طلاب	medicine	الطب
engineering	الهندسة	area	منطقة	hotels	فنادق
mountain	جبل	plateau	هضبة	environment	بيئة
government	الحكومة	transportation links	روابط النقل	vision	رؤية

Adjectives

الصفات

national	وطني	older	أقدم	leading	رائد
luxury	فخم	famous	مشهور	clean	نظيف
peaceful	مسالم	sustainable	مستدام	empty	فارغ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
devise	devised	is	was
reduce	reduced	lead	led
offer	offered	teach	taught
welcome	welcomed	run	ran
study	studied		
move	moved		

**Important expressions & Prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

center for	مركز لـ	full of life	مُفعم بالحياة
plan to	يخطط لـ	a great example of	مثال رائع لـ
move in	ينتقل/يعزل	run businesses	يدير أعمال

Al Galala: Egypt's City Above The Clouds**الجلالة: مدينة مصرية فوق السحاب**

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt, built on Al Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. It was part of a national plan devised in 2015 to reduce crowding in older cities. Today, it is one of Egypt's leading smart cities with clean air and sea views. The city has luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car that offers great views from the mountain to the sea.



Al Galala is also a center for education and science. Galala University welcomes students from Egypt and abroad to study medicine, engineering, and more.

In the past, the area was empty, but now it is full of life. People work in hotels, teach, or run businesses. More families are moving in to enjoy its peaceful environment.

The government plans to build more homes, parks, and transportation links. Al Galala is a great example of Egypt's vision for smart, sustainable cities.

مدينة الجلالة هي مدينة عصرية في مصر، بُنيت على هضبة الجلالة بالقرب من العين السخنة. كانت جزءًا من خطة وطنية صُممت عام 2015 لتقليل الازدحام في المدن الأقدم. اليوم، تُعد واحدة من المدن الذكية الرائدة في مصر، حيث تتمتع بهواء نقي وإطلالات على البحر. تضم المدينة فنادق فاخرة وشواطئ وحديقة مائية، وتلفريك شهيرًا يقدم إطلالات رائعة من الجبل إلى البحر. كما تُعد الجلالة مركزًا للتعليم والعلوم، حيث تستقبل جامعة الجلالة طلابًا من مصر والخارج لدراسة الطب والهندسة وأكثر. في الماضي، كانت المنطقة خالية، لكنها الآن مُفعمّة بالحياة. يعمل الناس في الفنادق أو التدريس أو إدارة الأعمال. كما ينتقل المزيد من العائلات للعيش فيها للاستمتاع ببيئتها الهادئة. تخطط الحكومة لبناء المزيد من المنازل والحدائق وروابط المواصلات. تُعد الجلالة مثالًا رائعًا لرؤية مصر للمدن الذكية والمستدامة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We climbed the yesterday.
a. beach b. mountain c. air d. sea
- 2 The from the cable car are amazing.
a. views b. students c. businesses d. cities
- 3 We stayed in a/an hotel. Everything was very expensive.
a. luxury b. bad c. boring d. old
- 4 Al Galala is a city. It looks after the environment.
a. soft b. empty c. sustainable d. deep

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

plateau – beaches – cable – peaceful

Every summer, I go to Al Galala city. I visit my grandparents there. They moved there to enjoy the ⁽¹⁾ environment. Al Galala city is also a modern city. It's built on a ⁽²⁾ near Ain Sokhna. It has many luxury hotels and ⁽³⁾ My father told me that in the past the area was empty, but now it is full of life.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- galala University welcomes students from egypt.

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 What was the plan of building Al Galala City?

- 2 How does Al Galala show Egypt's vision?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Past simple tense (من الماضي البسيط)

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the past simple for:
 - actions that started and finished in the past. • نستخدم الماضي البسيط لـ:
 - actions that happened one after another in the past. - الأفعال التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.
 - habits in the past. - الأفعال التي حدثت واحدة تلو الأخرى في الماضي.
- Ex:** – She **baked** a delicious cake yesterday.
- Ex:** – We **entered** the museum, **took** photos, and **bought** souvenirs.
- Ex:** – They **played** outside after school every day.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Negative النفي

Question الاستفهام

I. Affirmative



Subject (فاعل) + the 2nd form of the verb (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ...

(A) Regular verbs

الأفعال المنتظمة

verb + -ed

لمعظم الأفعال.

Ex: – visit → visit**ed**

verb + -d

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e).

Ex: – smile → smile**d**

verb + -ied

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن.

Ex: – cry → cry**ied**

Ex: – He visit**ed** his uncle last Friday.



(B) Irregular verbs

الأفعال غير المنتظمة

- Irregular verbs have special past forms. They change in different ways.
- الأفعال غير المنتظمة لها صيغ ماضٍ خاصة. تتغير بطرق مختلفة.



Ex: go → **went** buy → **bought** eat → **ate**

– We **bought** a new computer a week ago.



- Verb (to be) has (2) forms in the affirmative past simple:

• فعل (be) له صيغتان في الماضي البسيط المثبت:

I, He, She, It,
Singular noun



was

You, We, They,
Plural noun



were

Ex: – In the past, Al Galala Plateau **was** empty.



2. Negative



Subject + **did not (didn't) + verb (infinitive)** (مصدر الفعل) ...
was not (wasn't)/were not (weren't)

Ex: – Noha **didn't** clean the house last night.



Yes/No question (السؤال بـ (هل))

3. Question



Did + subject + verb (infinitive) ...?

Was/Were + subject

Ex: **Was** Maher at home yesterday?

– Yes, he **was**. – No, he **wasn't**.



Wh-question (السؤال بأداة الاستفهام)

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + **did + subject + verb (infinitive)** ...?
was/were + subject

Ex: – Where **did** he **go** yesterday?

He **went** to the club.



Key words (الكلمات الدالة)

• yesterday

أمس

• last (week)

(الأسبوع) الماضي

• (three years) ago

منذ (ثلاثة أعوام) مضت

• in (2009)

في عام (2009)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 He his grandparents last weekend.
a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting
- 2 They to the park yesterday.
a. go b. went c. goes d. going
- 3 Did you your brother with his homework?
a. help b. helped c. helps d. helping
- 4 They built a house three years
a. tomorrow b. next c. last d. ago
- 5 Why you late yesterday?
a. were b. was c. is d. are
- 6 We to Italy in 2010.
a. travel b. traveling c. travels d. traveled
- 7 Did she call you yesterday? – No, she
a. doesn't b. weren't c. didn't d. wasn't
- 8 Mona didn't pizza for dinner.
a. eat b. ate c. eats d. eating

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 She bought a new dress (next) week.
- 2 We (play) football three weeks ago.
- 3 I (not finish) my homework yesterday.
- 4 Why did she (cleans) her room yesterday?
- 5 The weather (be) hot yesterday.
- 6 The cat (catches) a mouse last morning.
- 7 (Do) they travel to London in 2000?
- 8 The baby (weren't) in bed yesterday.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nora and her friends were excited to visit Al Galala City for the first time. When they arrived, they were surprised by the modern buildings and clean air. The cable car ride gave them amazing views from the mountains to the beautiful sea. They spent the day at the water park. They relaxed on the beach. Nora loved Galala University, where students from around the world study. The area, which was empty before, is now full of life and people. As the sun set, Nora thought, "This smart, sustainable city is truly Egypt's future!"

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Nora and her friends were to visit Al Galala city.
a. sad b. angry c. excited d. worried
- 2 The cable ride gave them amazing views.
a. plane b. car c. train d. ship

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 What were they surprised by?

.....

- 4 Who studies at Galala University?

.....

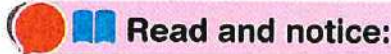
- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 They (not have) breakfast yesterday.
- 2 We (enjoy) the trip last week.



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

village	قرية	alone	بمفرده	sons	أولاد
farmer	مزارع	crops	محاصيل	land	أرض
sticks	عصي	unity	الاتحاد	together	معًا
hard	بصعوبة	easily	بسهولة		

Adjectives الصفات

single	منفرد	old	عجوز/كبير السن	worried	قلق
weaker	أضعف	strong	قوي	big	كبير

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
live يعيش	lived	show يعرض	showed
tie يربط	tied	feed يُطعم	fed
water يروي/يسقي	watered	fight يعارك/يتشاجر	fought
stop يتوقف	stopped	make يجعل/يصنع	made
listen يستمع	listened	become يصبح	became
fail يفشل	failed	break يكسر	broke
call ينادي/يسمي	called	understand يفهم	understood

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

A long time ago,	منذ زمن بعيد،	plenty of	الكثير من
along the Nile River	على ضفاف النيل	went on	استمر/تابع
From that day on,	منذ ذلك اليوم،	just like you	يشبهك تمامًا/مثلك
worked hard	عمل بجد	be broken easily	يسهل كسره



Definitions

تعريفات

argue	يجادل	to give reasons for or against something	أن يعطي أسبابًا لصالح أو ضد شيء ما
bundle	حزمة	a group of things tied together	مجموعة من الأشياء مربوطة معًا
strength	قوة	being strong	كونك قويًا
wisdom	حكمة	using your knowledge to make good decisions	استخدام معرفتك لاتخاذ قرارات جيدة
unite	يتحد	to come together	نجتمع معًا



Note

The story elements are:

عناصر القصة هي:

- **Characters:** the people or animals in a story
- **Setting:** the place and time of a story
- **Beginning:** this is where a story starts
- **Middle:** this is where the problem or main event happens
- **End:** this is where a story ends
- **Moral:** the lesson we learn from a story

- الشخصيات: الأشخاص أو الحيوانات في قصة ما
- الخلفية: مكان وزمان قصة ما
- البداية: حيث تبدأ قصة ما
- الوسط: حيث تحدث المشكلة أو الحدث الرئيسي
- النهاية: حيث تنتهي قصة ما
- العبرة: الدرس الذي نتعلمه من قصة ما

Tip!

- When you read a story, try to feel what the character feels. Think: Do I feel the same in this part?
- عندما تقرأ قصة، حاول أن تشعر بما تشعر به الشخصية. فُكِّر: هل أشعر بنفس الشعور في هذا الجزء؟



Listen, look, and read:



page 77

استمع، انظر واقرأ:



Play Audio

Beginning,

A long time ago, in a small village along the Nile River, there lived an old man with his three sons. The old man was a farmer who worked hard growing crops on his land. The farm was big and gave them plenty of food, but the three sons were always fighting. They argued about who would water the crops, feed the animals, and who worked the hardest.



منذ زمن بعيد، في قرية صغيرة على ضفاف نهر النيل، عاش رجل عجوز مع أبنائه الثلاثة. كان الرجل العجوز مزارعًا يعمل بجد في زراعة المحاصيل في أرضه. كانت المزرعة كبيرة وتوفر لهم طعامًا وفيرًا، لكن الأبناء الثلاثة كانوا دائمًا يتشاجرون. كانوا يتجادلون حول من يسقي المحاصيل، ويُطعم الحيوانات، ومن يعمل بجد أكبر.

**Middle**

This made their father very worried. As the old man grew weaker, he became more worried about his sons. "My sons," he said, "you should stop fighting and work together. If you all unite, you will be strong". The three sons did not listen to their father. One day, the father called his sons and showed them a bundle of sticks tied together. He asked each son to break the bundle. Each one tried hard, but they failed. Then, the father untied the bundle and gave them single sticks. The sons broke them easily.

أثار هذا القلق الشديد لدى والدهم. ومع تزايد ضعف الرجل العجوز، ازداد قلقه على أبنائه. قال: "يا أبنائي، عليكم أن تتوقفوا عن التشاجر وتعملوا معًا. إذا اتحدتم جميعًا، ستكونون أقوىاء". لم يستمع الأبناء الثلاثة لأبيهم. في أحد الأيام، نادى الأب أبنائه وأراهم حزمة من العصي مربوطة معًا. طلب من كل ابن كسر الحزمة. حاول كل واحد منهم جاهدًا، لكنهم فشلوا. ثم فك الأب الحزمة وأعطاهم عصيًا منفردة. كسرها الأبناء بسهولة.

End

"You see," said the father, "these sticks are just like you. Together, you are strong. But alone, you can be broken easily." The father went on saying, "Unity gives strength." From that day on, the sons understood their father's wisdom. They stopped fighting and worked together.

قال الأب: "أترون، هذه العصي تشبهكم تمامًا. معًا، أنتم أقوىاء. لكن بمفردكم، يسهل كسركم." وتابع الأب قائلاً: "الوحدة قوة." منذ ذلك اليوم، فهم الأبناء حكمة أبيهم. توقفوا عن التشاجر وعملوا معًا.

The moral of the story العبرة (الدرس المستفاد) من القصة

Unity makes us strong and hard to break.

الوحدة تجعلنا أقوىاء ويصعب كسرنًا.

Tryout

Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 The old man lived in a small city. ()
- 2 The bundle of sticks was easy to break. ()
- 3 At the end, the three sons started to work together. ()

3. (✓)

2. (X)

1. (X)

Answers:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The word means a group of things tied together.
 a. strength b. wisdom c. son d. bundle
- 2 They grew on their land.
 a. toys b. sticks c. crops d. sons
- 3 The students showed when they worked together to clean the classroom.
 a. noise b. unity c. land d. river
- 4 I can't sleep well. I become before exams.
 a. happy b. hungry c. pleased d. worried

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

strength – worried – happy – wisdom

A football team used to lose every match. Each player wanted to be the star and never passed the ball. Their coach was ⁽¹⁾ and told them, "You must play as one team. Unity gives ⁽²⁾" In the next game, they worked together and passed the ball. They won for the first time. They learned ⁽³⁾ from their coach and became better.

3 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 1 What was the old man's job?

- 2 What did the father show his sons to teach them a lesson?

- 3 What did the sons argue about?

B Pronunciation

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

• When we say past tense verbs ending in -ed, we can hear three different sounds:

• عندما نقول أفعال الماضي المنتهية بـ -ed يمكننا سماع ثلاثة أصوات مختلفة:

– /t/ sound: after words that end with p, k, f, s, ch, sh (voiceless sounds).

– صوت /t/: بعد الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ p, k, f, s, ch, sh (الأصوات المهموسة).

Ex: – liked, watched, kissed

– /d/ sound: after words that end with vowels or voiced sounds (like b, g, v, l, m, n, r, z).

– صوت /d/: بعد الكلمات التي تنتهي بحروف متحركة أو الأصوات المجهرورة مثل (b, g, v, l, m, n, r, z).

Ex: – played, cleaned, called

– /Id/ sound: after words ending with t or d.

Ex: – wanted, needed

(-ed) ending sounds أصوات نهاية (-ed)

/t/	/d/	/Id/
cooked طبخ	loved حب	visited زار
washed غسل	played لعب	painted رسم
jumped قفز	cleaned نظف	needed احتاج
watched شاهد	called اتصل	started بدأ
helped ساعد		wanted أراد
kissed قبّل		
laughed ضحك		
liked أحب		

Tryout

 Listen and circle the verb with the different (-ed) ending sound out:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الفعل الذي به صوت نهاية (-ed) مختلف:



Play Audio

1 washed – wanted – cooked – kissed

2 cleaned – loved – called – jumped

3 visited – played – painted – needed

3. played

2. jumped

1. wanted

Answers:

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

An old farmer had three sons. They lived in a small village along the Nile River. They fought and they didn't work together. Their father was worried about their future, so he taught them a lesson using a bundle of sticks. When tied together, the sticks couldn't be broken, but when single, they could be broken easily. The father explained, "Together, you are strong; alone, you are not." His sons finally understood the importance of unity. They stopped arguing and began working together, making their farm better. The story shows how teamwork brings strength.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined word "strength" means being
 a. sad b. tired c. strong d. weak
- 2 Their father taught them a lesson using a bundle of
 a. flowers b. sticks c. bottles d. books

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- 3 What happened when the sticks were single?

.....

- 4 What is the moral of the story?

.....

- 5 Why was the father worried?

.....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جُملاً:

- 1 old – The – with – sons. – lived – man – his

.....

- 2 about – feed – the animals. – who – would – They – argued

.....

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

country	دولة/بلد	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	project	مشروع
stations	محطات	panels	ألواح	electricity	كهرباء
pollution	تلوث	beauty	جمال	engineers	مهندسون
builders	بناؤون	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	fuel	وقود
workers	عمال	training	تدريب	skills	مهارات
communities	مجتمعات	afterlife	الحياة الآخرة	development	تنمية
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر	Lotus Chalice	كأس اللوتس	alabaster	مرمر
handles	مقابض	tomb	مقبرة	symbol	رمز
ceremonies	مراسم	funeral rituals	طقوس الجنازة	display board	لوحة العرض

Adjectives الصفات

nearby	قريب	important	مهم/هام	valuable	قيّم
expensive	باهظ الثمن/غالٍ	eternal	أبدي/بلا نهاية	proud	فخور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
provide يوفر	provided	think يعتقد/يفكر	thought
create يخلق	created	find يجد	found
improve يُحسن/يُحسن	improved	bring يُحضّر	brought
benefit يفيد	benefited		
protect يحمي	protected		



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

ideal for	مثالي لـ	keep ... safe	يحافظ على سلامة
save money	يوفر مالاً	instead of	بدلاً من
step toward	خطوة نحو	made of	مصنوع من
look like	يشبه	live forever	يعيش للأبد



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

EcoNews Egypt

أخبار مصر البيئية

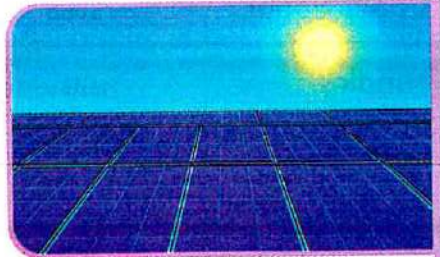
Posted on: April 12 تم النشر في: 12 أبريل Category: Energy & Environment الفئة: الطاقة والبيئة

Why I Think Benban Is Important لماذا اعتقد أن مشروع بنبان مهم

By: Mariam Mahmoud

بواسطة: مريم محمود

Egypt is a sunny country, making it ideal for solar energy. One important project is Benban Solar Park near Aswan, one of the world's largest solar stations. Built between 2018 and 2019, it has over 6 million panels and provides electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories.



مصر بلدٌ مشمس، مما يجعلها مثاليةً لتوليد الطاقة الشمسية. ومن أهم مشاريعها محطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية قرب أسوان. إحدى أكبر محطات الطاقة الشمسية في العالم. بنيت المحطة بين عامي 2018 و2019، وتضم أكثر من ستة ملايين لوحة، وتوفّر الكهرباء للمنازل، المدارس، المستشفيات والمصانع.

Benban uses clean, sustainable energy, reducing pollution and keeping the air safe. It also creates thousands of jobs for engineers, builders, and people from nearby villages, helping them support their families.

تستخدم بنبان طاقة نظيفة ومستدامة، مما يقلل التلوث ويحافظ على سلامة الهواء. كما يوفّر آلاف الوظائف للمهندسين، البنائين والناس من القرى المجاورة، مما يساعدهم على إعالة أسرهم.

The project is important because it saves money by using sunlight instead of expensive fuel, protects the environment, and brings jobs to Upper Egypt. Although some workers need training, it helps them learn new skills and improves local communities.

هذا المشروع مهم لأنه يوفر المال باستخدام أشعة الشمس بدلاً من الوقود الباهظ الثمن، ويحمي البيئة، ويوفر الوظائف إلى صعيد مصر. ورغم أن بعض العمال يحتاجون إلى تدريب، إلا أنه يساعدهم على تعلّم مهارات جديدة، ويحسن المجتمعات المحلية.



Benban Solar Park is a smart and valuable project for Egypt. It benefits people, protects nature, and supports development. It's a proud step toward a cleaner, better future.

تُعَدُّ محطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية مشروعًا ذكيًا وقيِّمًا لمصر. فهي تُفيد الناس، تحمي الطبيعة، وتدعم التنمية. إنها خطوة فخر نحو مستقبل أنظف وأفضل.

**Note**

- In writing, we use facts and opinions. A fact is something real. We can check it to see if it is true. An opinion is what someone thinks, feels, or believes.

• في الكتابة، نستخدم الحقائق والآراء. الحقيقة هي أمر واقعي، ويمكننا التحقق منه للتأكد من صحته. أما الرأي فهو ما يعتقد الشخص أو يشعر أو يؤمن به.

Ex: – Benban Solar Park helps reduce pollution. (**Fact**)

– I believe Benban Solar Park is a great idea for Egypt and the world. (**Opinion**)

Tip!

- When you write about what you think or how you feel about something—this is called opinion writing. It's a way to share your ideas and say what you believe.
- عندما تكتب عما تفكر فيه أو تشعر به تجاه أمر ما، يُسمى هذا كتابة الرأي. إنها طريقة لمشاركة أفكارك والتعبير عما تعتقده.

Tips for opinion writing

نصائح لكتابة الرأي



For opinion writing, you should include:

بالنسبة لكتابة الرأي، يجب أن تُضمِّن:

- an opinion starter.

بداية الرأي.

Ex: I think Benban Solar Park is a very important and smart project for Egypt.

- supporting reasons.

أسباب داعمة.

Ex: It helps us save money by using sunlight..., It protects the environment.

- use of examples.

استخدام الأمثلة.

Ex: It generates electricity for places, such as homes, schools, hospitals, and factories.

- strong adjectives.

صفات قوية.

Ex: smart, important, great, cleaner, proud

- writer's voice using 1st person pronouns (e.g. I, my,).

صوت الكاتب باستخدام ضمائر المتكلم.

Ex: I feel proud of this project. I hope other countries follow Egypt's example.



A Display Board about an Object in the Grand Egyptian Museum

لوحة عرض عن أحد القطع الأثرية في المتحف المصري الكبير

informative paragraph

فقرة معلوماتية

Lotus Chalice

كأس اللوتس

title عنوان

This chalice is made of alabaster. It looks like a white lotus flower with two handles. It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb. Now, it is in the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was used in special ceremonies like funeral rituals. It is a symbol of eternal life and beauty. People believed it helped the king live forever in the afterlife.



picture

صورة

هذا الكأس مصنوع من المرمر. يشبه زهرة لوتس بيضاء بمقبضين. عُثر عليه في مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون، وهو الآن في المتحف المصري الكبير. تم استخدامه في مراسم خاصة، مثل طقوس الجنازة. وهو رمز للحياة الأبدية والجمال. اعتقد الناس أنه يساعد الملك على العيش إلى الأبد في الآخرة.



Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات التالية:

Steps of making a display board

خطوات صنع لوحة عرض



- Write the title. Write the name of the object at the top.

اكتب العنوان. اكتب اسم الشيء في الأعلى.

- Add a picture. Choose a clear photo or drawing of the object.

أضف صورة. اختر صورة واضحة أو رسماً للعنصر.

- Write a short paragraph. Use simple sentences to give information. Write about: what the object is / - what it looks like / - where it was found / - where it is now / - what it was used for / - what it means

اكتب فقرة قصيرة. استخدم جُملاً بسيطة لتقديم المعلومات. اكتب عن: - ماهية الشيء / - شكله / - مكان العثور عليه / - مكان وجوده الآن / - استخدامه / - معناه

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Egypt always tries to use to provide electricity.
a. rituals b. handles c. pollution d. solar energy
- 2 Lotus Chalice is a of eternal life.
a. ceremony b. symbol c. funeral d. job
- 3 Using sustainable energy helps pollution.
a. provide b. create c. reduce d. protect
- 4 He broke one of the of the door.
a. handles b. alabaster c. skills d. communities

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

smart – environment – panels – ideal

Egypt is sunny all year, which makes it a good place to use solar energy. Benban Solar Park is a big project in Aswan with over 6 million solar ⁽¹⁾ It gives electricity to homes, schools, and hospitals. This makes it an ⁽²⁾ project for Egypt. It helps protect the air and ⁽³⁾ Many families also benefit from the jobs it creates. It's a valuable place for clean energy.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- 1 chalice – alabaster. – of – made – This – is
.....
- 2 Solar – Benban – project. – is – a smart – Park
.....

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- it provides electricity to homes schools, and factories.
.....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من خمسين (50) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية:

"A project in Egypt"
(help – jobs)

Vocabulary

passport	جواز سفر	luggage	أمتعة/حقائب سفر	souvenir	تذكّار
brochure	كتيّب/نشرة	exhibition	معرض	travel plan	خطة سفر
pack	يحزم/يجهز	book	يحجز	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
cable car	تلفريك	argue	يجادل	bundle	حزمة
wisdom	حكمة	unite	يتّحد	fly	يطير
panels	الواح	strength	قوة	symbol	رمز
board	يصعد على متن طائرة/يستقل	beach	شاطئ	mountain	جبل
sea	بحر	guided tour	جولة إرشادية	information desk	مكتب الاستعلامات

Language

Past simple tense

- We use the past simple for actions that started and finished in the past, actions that happened one after another in the past, and habits in the past.
- نستخدم الماضي البسيط للأفعال التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي، والأفعال التي حدثت واحدًا تلو الآخر في الماضي، والعادات في الماضي.

Subject + the 2nd form of the verb ...

Affirmative



- Ex:** – He **visited** his uncle last Friday.
– We **got** a new computer a week ago.

Subject + did not (didn't) + verb (infinitive) ...
was not (wasn't)/were not (weren't)

Negative



- Ex:** – Noha **didn't** clean the house last night.

Yes/No question



Did + subject + verb (infinitive) ...?

Was/Were + subject

- Ex:** – **Was** Maher at home yesterday?

Wh-question



Question word + did + subject + verb (infinitive) ...?
was/were + subject

- Ex:** – Where **did** he go yesterday?



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1 A Trip Through Time

- Egypt is one of the oldest countries. مصر هي واحدة من أقدم البلدان.
- Tourists visit Egypt to explore its history and wonders every year. يزور السياح مصر كل عام لاستكشاف تاريخها وعجائبها.
- The Grand Egyptian Museum is a new and exciting place near the Pyramids in Giza. المتحف المصري الكبير هو مكان جديد ومثير يقع بالقرب من الأهرامات في الجيزة.
- The museum took almost 20 years to finish. استغرق بناء المتحف ما يقرب من 20 عامًا.
- Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and King Khufu's Solar Boat. يمكن للزوار رؤية التماثيل المجوهرات الذهبية الأدوات المومياءات الحقيقية وقارب الملك خوفو الشمسي.
- There is an information desk at the entrance for help. يوجد مكتب معلومات للمساعدة.
- The museum uses smart screens and amazing shows. يستخدم المتحف شاشات ذكية وعروضًا مذهلة.

Lesson 2 A Dream Comes True

- Al Galala City is a modern, smart city built on Al Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. مدينة الجلالة مدينة ذكية حديثة بُنيت على هضبة الجلالة قرب العين السخنة.
- The city has clean air, sea views, luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car. تتمتع المدينة بهواء نقي، إطلالات بحرية، فنادق فاخرة، شواطئ، حديقة مائية، وتلفريك مشهور.
- Galala University welcomes students from Egypt and abroad to study medicine, engineering, and more. جامعة الجلالة تستقبل طلابًا من مصر ومن الخارج لدراسة الطب والهندسة وغيرها.
- The area was once empty, but now people live and work there in hotels, schools, and businesses. كانت المنطقة خالية في الماضي، أما الآن فيعيش الناس ويعملون فيها في الفنادق والمدارس والشركات.

Lessons 4&5 Egypt Goes Green/Think and Create

- Benban Solar Park is one of the world's largest solar stations near Aswan. محطة بنبان الشمسية من أكبر محطات الطاقة الشمسية في العالم، وتقع قرب أسوان.
- It uses clean, sustainable energy and provides electricity to homes and other buildings. تستخدم طاقة نظيفة ومستدامة وتوفر الكهرباء للمنازل ومبانٍ أخرى.
- The project creates thousands of jobs and helps local communities. يوفر المشروع آلاف الوظائف ويساعد المجتمعات المحلية.
- It benefits people, protects nature, and supports Egypt's development. يُفيد الناس، يحمي الطبيعة، ويدعم تنمية مصر.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

أمتعة/حقائب سفر	جوار سفر
كتيب/لشرة	تذكار
خطة سفر	معرض
جولة إرشادية	مكتب الاستعلامات
يحجز	يحزم/يجهز
مومباوات	يصعد على متن طائرة/يستقل

Lesson (2)

هضبة	شاطئ
تلفريك	جبل
تعليم	بيتة
رؤية	مركز
الطب	ازدحام
الهندسة	جامعة

Lesson (3)

قوة	حكمة
يجادل	يتحد
أرض	حزمة
عصي	عجوز/كبير السن
الاتحاد	أبناء
منفرد	محاصيل

Lessons (4&5)

مراسم	الطاقة الشمسية
تلوث	الواح
كاس اللوتس	كهراء
مرمر	طقوس الجنازة



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
explore		finish	
work		devise	
tell		run	
lead		stay	
ask		take	
leave		study	
reduce		provide	
welcome		feed	
offer		move	
tie		build	
listen		create	
become		find	
understand		improve	
stop		bring	
break		benefit	
show		fight	
water		protect	
fail		make	



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum"

(1) Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. Giza 2. mummies 3. guide

Verbs

1. visited 2. saw 3. told

Others

1. amazing 2. real 3. golden

(2) Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكلمة الجملة)

1. We visited the Grand Egyptian Museum in Giza.
2. Inside, we saw real mummies and the Solar Boat.
3. The guide told us about the golden jewelry.
4. It was an amazing place full of wonders from Ancient Egypt.

(3) Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

We visited the Grand Egyptian Museum in Giza. Inside, we saw real mummies and the Solar Boat. The guide told us about the golden jewelry. It was an amazing place full of wonders from Ancient Egypt. We also used smart screens to learn more. I want to go there again with my family.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"Lotus Chalice"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences

1. 2.
3. 4.

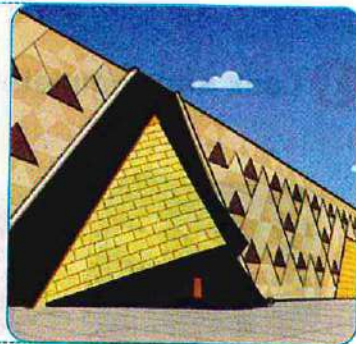
Your paragraph فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

The Grand Egyptian Museum

The Grand Egyptian Museum is a new and exciting place in Giza. It is near the Pyramids. Visitors can see mummies, statues, golden jewelry, and the Solar Boat. There is an information desk and smart screens. The museum tells the story of Egypt in a fun and special way.



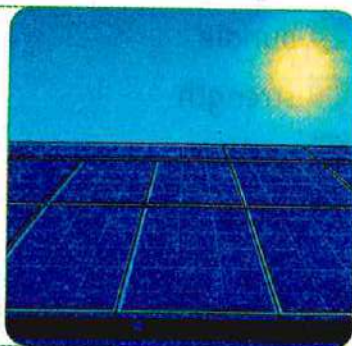
Al Galala City

Al Galala City is a new, smart city in Egypt. It is near Ain Sokhna. The city has hotels, beaches, a water park, and a cable car. Galala University offers education in different fields. People live and work there now. It is a smart city with clean air and sea views.



Benban Solar Park

Benban Solar Park is a big solar project in Aswan. It gives electricity to homes, schools, and hospitals. It uses clean energy and keeps the air safe. The project creates many jobs and helps people learn new skills. It is a smart and important step for Egypt's future.



Lotus Chalice

The Lotus Chalice is made of alabaster. It looks like a white lotus flower with two handles. It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb. Now, it is in the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was used in funeral rituals. It is a symbol of eternal life. People believed it helped the king live forever.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Look and complete the sentences with these travel verbs:

انظر واكمل الجمل باستخدام أفعال السفر التالية:



fly



pack



book



board

- 1 Hello! I'd like to a hotel room, please.
- 2 They will to Aswan next year.
- 3 Do you have the ticket to the plane?
- 4 Let's our clothes in these suitcases.

2 Read the words. Match them to their meanings:

اقرأ الكلمات. وصلها بمعانيها:

- | | |
|------------|---|
| 1 argue | a being strong |
| 2 bundle | b to come together |
| 3 strength | c to give reasons for or against something |
| 4 wisdom | d a group of things tied together |
| 5 unite | e using your knowledge to make good decisions |

3 Complete the paragraph with the past simple form of the verbs between brackets:

أكمل الفقرة باستخدام صيغة الماضي البسيط للأفعال الموجودة بين القوسين:

Last weekend, Omar and his friend ⁽¹⁾ (are) at the new science museum. They ⁽²⁾ (watch) a show about space. Omar ⁽³⁾ (not understand) some parts of it. His friend ⁽⁴⁾ (explain) everything to him. They ⁽⁵⁾ (take) photos of the rockets and stars. At the end, the guide ⁽⁶⁾ (ask) Omar if he ⁽⁷⁾ (enjoy) the show. Omar ⁽⁸⁾ (smile) and said, "Yes, it was amazing!"

Test 1

on unit (5)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The farmer lived in a small village by the
a. city b. mountain c. desert d. Nile
2. The three sons always and didn't work together.
a. smiled b. argued c. played d. listened
3. The father asked them to break a bundle of
a. flowers b. food c. sticks d. clothes
4. When the father untied the bundle, they broke single sticks
a. easily b. quickly c. kindly d. safely

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many projects jobs for local people.
a. visit b. jump c. watch d. create
2. You must have a/an to board.
a. passport b. brochure c. exhibition d. souvenir
3. I stayed in a hotel. It cost me a lot of money.
a. broken b. cheap c. luxury d. bad



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

afterlife – forever – alabaster – rituals

This beautiful chalice looks like a white lotus flower. It has two handles and is made of ⁽¹⁾..... . It was found in the tomb of King Tutankhamun. Today, it is kept in the Grand Egyptian Museum. People used it during special ceremonies and funeral ⁽²⁾..... . It is a symbol of beauty and eternal life. The Ancient Egyptians believed it helped the king in the ⁽³⁾..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Zafarana Wind Farm is a clean energy project in Egypt. It is near the Red Sea, where the wind is strong most of the year. The farm has big wind turbines that generate electricity for homes, schools, and factories. It helps keep the air clean and safe. The project also provides jobs to engineers, workers, and people from nearby villages. Many of them got training to learn new skills. Zafarana saves money by using wind instead of fuel. It is a smart and helpful project that supports the environment and brings a better future for Egypt.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

turbines توربينات/طواحين



- The underlined word "provides" means
 a. reduces b. takes c. gives d. learns
- The is strong most of the year near the Red Sea.
 a. wind b. sun c. rain d. snow

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the Zafarana Wind Farm have to generate electricity?

.....

- How does the Zafarana Wind Farm save money?

.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. the oldest – is – countries. – Egypt – one – of

2. The – bundle. – untied – father – the

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mazen (weren't) at the library last week.

2. When did you (finished) your homework?

7 Punctuate the following:

1. the city has luxury hotels beaches, and a water park.

2. It was found in King tutankhamun's tomb

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

8**“Al Galala City”**

• Where is it built?

• What does it have?

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

sustainable – electricity – jobs – environment – stations

Mona : I read about a big project in Aswan called Benban. Do you know it?

Nagwa : Yes, it's one of the biggest solar ⁽¹⁾ in the world! It provides ⁽²⁾ to houses, schools, and hospitals.

Mona : Wow! That sounds helpful.

Nagwa : Yes, and it uses ⁽³⁾ energy.

Mona : I think that's good for the ⁽⁴⁾

Nagwa : Of course! And it also creates many ⁽⁵⁾ to people in Upper Egypt.

2 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. pack – board – fly – information (.....)
2. mountain – education – plateau – beach (.....)
3. smiled – went – ate – got (.....)
4. worried – special – bundle – unusual (.....)
5. parks – homes – cities – sea (.....)

3 Reorder:

1. to build – more – The government – homes. – plans

2. technology. – uses – museum – The – modern

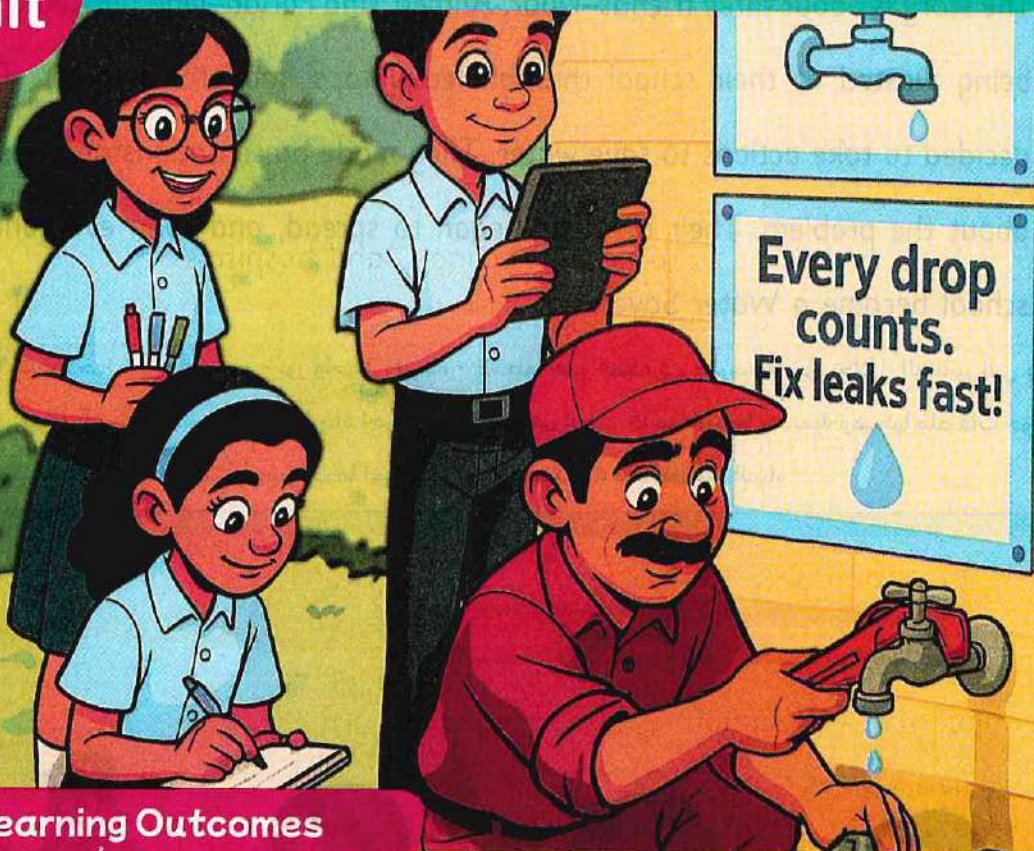
3. a symbol – life. – Lotus Chalice – of eternal – is

4. near – Solar Park – Aswan. – is – Benban

5. plenty of – gave – The farm – them – food.

6 Unit

The Water Savers



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Listening & Speaking

- Participate in pair or group discussions about the story and its moral
- Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events
- Role-play short conversations
- Present ideas clearly with confidence during speaking activities

المشاركة في مناقشات ثنائية أو جماعية حول القصة والدرس المستفاد منها
طرح أسئلة بسيطة حول الشخصيات والأحداث والإجابة عنها
تبادل أدوار في محادثات قصيرة
عرض الأفكار بوضوح وثقة أثناء أنشطة التحدث

Reading

- Identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a short story
- Retell the sequence of events using their own words
- Understand the main idea and theme (e.g., environmental responsibility, teamwork)

تحديد الشخصيات الرئيسية، والخلفية، والأحداث الرئيسية في قصة قصيرة
إعادة سرد تسلسل الأحداث بكلماتهم الخاصة
فهم الفكرة الرئيسية والموضوع (مثل: المسؤولية البيئية، العمل الجماعي)

Values

- Being a good citizen, working together and taking care of resources

تكوين مواطن صالح، تعزيز العمل الجماعي، والعناية بالموارد

Writing

- Make a poster or write a paragraph using story details and personal ideas
- Organize ideas in a logical sequence (beginning, middle, end)

إنشاء ملصق أو كتابة فقرة باستخدام تفاصيل القصة والأفكار الشخصية
تنظيم الأفكار بتسلسل منطقي (البداية، الوسط، النهاية)

Story Map

خريطة القصة

- The story is about three friends—Noor, Ahmed, and Farida—who noticed water being wasted at their school through leaky taps and broken pipes. They decided to take actions to save water. They made presentations and posters about the problem. Their message began to spread, and soon everyone at school became a Water Saver.

• تدور القصة حول ثلاثة أصدقاء - نور وأحمد وفريدة - لاحظوا هدر المياه في مدرستهم من خلال الصنابير التي بها تسريب والمواسير المكسورة. فقرروا اتخاذ إجراءات للحفاظ على المياه. قدّموا عروضاً تقديمية وصنعوا ملصقات حول المشكلة. بدأت رسالتهم تنتشر، وسرعان ما أصبح كل فرد في المدرسة محافظاً على المياه.

Characters

الشخصيات



Noor



Ahmed



Farida



Mr. Youssef

Setting

مكان الأحداث

- The school

المدرسة

The moral of the story

العبرة (الدرس المستفاد) من القصة

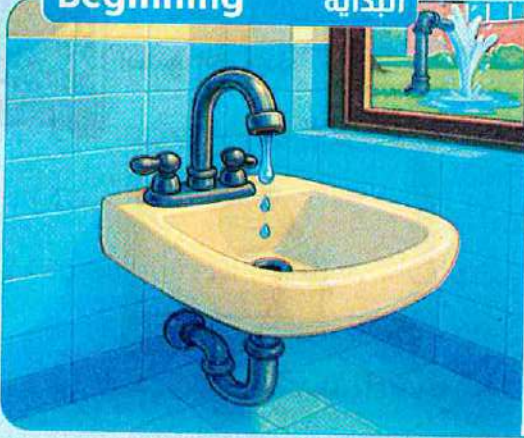
- Small actions can make a big difference.

الأفعال الصغيرة يمكن أن تُحدث فرقاً كبيراً.



Beginning

البداية

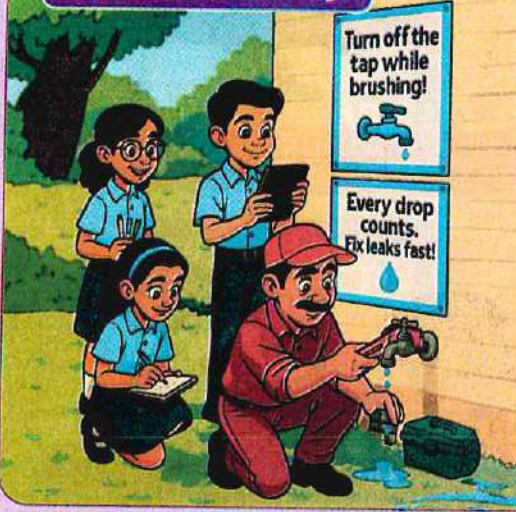


In a bright and busy school, Noor, Ahmed, and Farida noticed that a tap in the school bathroom kept dripping, and a pipe in the garden was broken. They knew that water was too precious to waste, so they decided to look for ways to help.

في مدرسة مشرقة ومزدحمة، لاحظ نور وأحمد وفريدا أن صنبورًا في حمام المدرسة يقطر ماءً باستمرار، وأن ماسورة في الحديقة مكسورة. أدركوا أن الماء ثمين جدًا ولا يجب إهداره، فقرروا البحث عن طرق للمساعدة.

Middle

الوسط



They went to their teacher's office and explained their plan. Ahmed used his tablet to take photos of the problems to use in their presentations. Farida used markers to make cheerful posters. Noor wrote down everything she noticed. They spoke to the school cleaner and learned a lot.

ذهبوا إلى مكتب معلمهم وشرحوا خطتهم. استخدم أحمد جهازه اللوحي (التابلت) لالتقاط صور للمشكلات لاستخدامها في عروضهم التقديمية. استخدمت فريدا أقلام التحديد لصنع ملصقات مبهجة. دوّنت نور كل ما لاحظته. تحدثوا مع عامل النظافة في المدرسة وتعلّموا الكثير.

End

النهاية



Their message began to spread. The school hung their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps. Teachers talked about how to save water. The head teacher gave them certificates of achievement. From that day on, everyone at the school became a Water Saver.

بدأت رسالتهم تنتشر. علّقت المدرسة ملصقاتهم في الحمامات والفصول الدراسية وبالقرب من صنابير الحدائق. وتحدّث المعلمون عن كيفية ترشيد استهلاك المياه. ومنحهم مدير المدرسة شهادات تقدير. ومنذ ذلك اليوم، أصبح كل فرد في المدرسة محافظًا على المياه.

Story Vocabulary

مفردات القصة

Listen, look, and repeat:

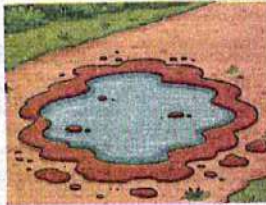
استمع، انظر وردد:



drip تقطر/تُنقَط



overflow يفيض/يغمر



puddle بركة صغيرة



leak تسريب



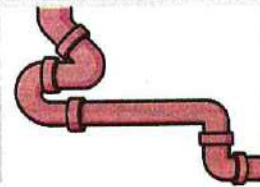
hallway ممر/رواق



hose خرطوم



tap صنبور



pipe ماسورة



drop قطرة



Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

friends	اصدقاء	ways	طرق	bathroom	حمام
garden	حديقة	walkway	ممر مشاة	head	رأس
classmate	زميل الدراسة	office	مكتب	plan	خطة
wisely	بحكمة	tablet	جهاز لوحي / تابلت	problems	مشكلات
artist	فنان	markers	اقلام تحديد	posters	ملصقات
brushing	تنظيف الأسنان بالفرشاة	unkindly	بفظاظة	sink	حوض
life	حياة	firmly	بحزم	bullying	التنمر
message	رسالة	classrooms	فصول	minutes	دقائق
head teacher	مدير المدرسة	children	اطفال	role	دور
ideas	افكار	work	عمل	presentations	عروض تقديمية
notebook	دفتر ملاحظات	water savers	المحافظون على المياه	school cleaner	عامل نظافة المدرسة

Adjectives الصفات

bright	مُشرق / لامع	busy	مزدحم	sunny	مُشمس
broken	مكسور	careless	مهمل / غير مبالي	wonderful	رائع / مذهش
colored	مُلَوَّن	surprised	متفاجئ	pleased	مسرور
proud	فخور	quiet	هادئ	little	صغير



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
help يساعد	helped	keep يُبقي/يحافظ على	kept
notice يلاحظ	noticed	shake يهز	shook
stop يتوقف	stopped	fall يسقط	fell
use يستخدم	used	understand يفهم	understood
form يُشكّل	formed	let يَدع/يسمح	let
waste يُهدر	wasted	leave يترك	left
agree يتفق/يوافق	agreed	speak يتحدث	spoke
explain يشرح/يوضح	explained	give يعطي	gave
smile يبتسم	smiled	become يصبح	became
wash يغسل	washed	stand يقف	stood
protect يحمي	protected	begin يبدأ	began
save يوفر	saved	hang يُعلّق	hung

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

look for يبحث عن	take better care of يعتني بشكل أفضل
can't afford to لا يستطيع تحمل	full of مملوء بـ
walk around يتجول	go for ينطلق/يَنقُذ
do a project يقوم بمشروع	wrote down دَوّن
take photos يلتقط صورًا	turn off يغلّق
take action يتخذ إجراء	believed in آمن بـ
certificates of achievement شهادات تقدير	From that day on, منذ ذلك اليوم،



Definitions

تعريفات

dripping التقطر/التنقيط	falling in small drops (like water from a tap) السقوط على شكل قطرات صغيرة (مثل الماء من الصنبور)
precious ثمين	very valuable; something we must protect قيّم للغاية؛ شيء يجب علينا حمايته
resources موارد	natural things that we use, like water, air, or energy الأشياء الطبيعية التي نستخدمها، مثل الماء أو الهواء أو الطاقة
snap (her fingers) تفرقع (أصابعها)	to make a quick sound with your fingers—a sign of having an idea أن تُصدر صوتًا سريعًا بأصابعك - علامة على وجود فكرة
curious فضولي/ثاقب	wanting to know or learn more الرغبة في معرفة أو تعلّم المزيد
leaky مُسَرَّب/راشح	letting water (or air) escape through a hole or crack السماح للماء (أو الهواء) بالتسريب من خلال ثقب أو شق
overflow يفيض/يغمر	to go over the edge (e.g., when a sink is too full) أن يتجاوز الحافة (على سبيل المثال، عندما يكون الحوض ممتلئًا جدًا)
puddles برك صغيرة	small pools of water on the ground برك صغيرة من الماء على الأرض
cheerful مبهج	happy, positive, bright and friendly سعيد، إيجابي، مشرق وودود
fix يُصلح	to repair something broken أن تُصلح شيئًا مكسورًا
spread ينتشر	to move to more people or places (like news or ideas) أن ينتقل إلى المزيد من الأشخاص أو الأماكن (مثل الأخبار أو الأفكار)
mini-challenges تحديات صغيرة	small, fun competitions to see who can do something best مسابقات صغيرة وممتعة لمعرفة من يمكنه القيام بشيء ما على أفضل وجه

Story Scenes

مشاهد القصة

Beginning



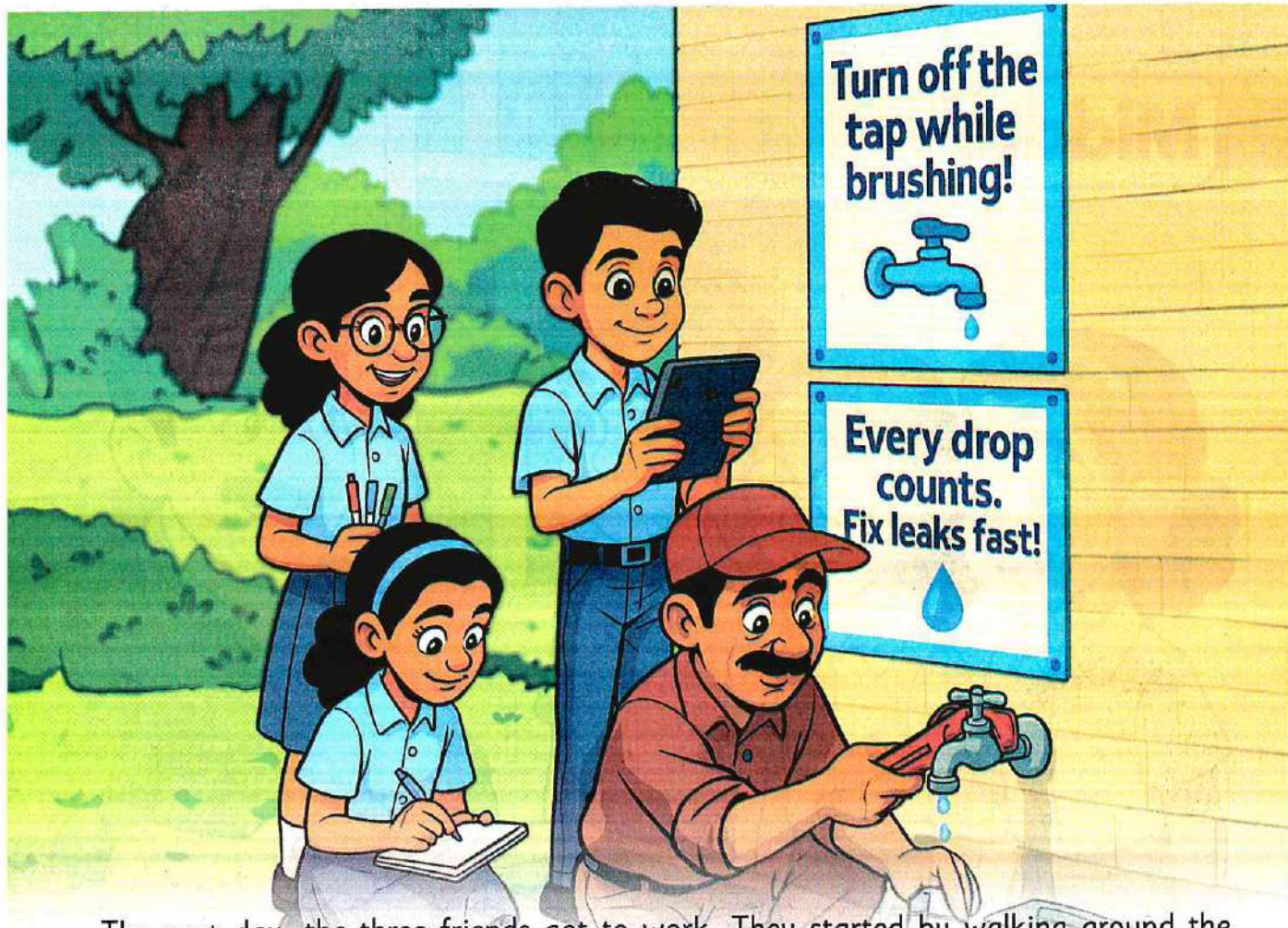
In a bright and busy school, three friends—Noor, Ahmed, and Farida—were always looking for ways to help. One sunny morning, they noticed something that made them stop. A tap in the school bathroom kept dripping, even when no one used it. In the garden, water overflowed from a broken pipe and formed little puddles near the **walkway**. “We waste too much water,” Noor said, shaking her head. She watched the drops fall one after another, knowing they were too precious to waste. Ahmed said, “We need to take better care of our resources,” he agreed. We can’t afford to be careless.”

في مدرسة مشرقية ومزدحمة، كان هناك ثلاثة أصدقاء - نور وأحمد وفريدة - يتحدثون دائماً عن طرق للمساعدة. في صباح مُشمس، لاحظوا شيئاً دفعهم للتوقف. صنبوراً في حَقام المدرسة ظلّ يقطر، حتى عندما لم يكن يستخدمه أحد. في الحديقة، فاض الماء من ماسورة مكسورة وشكّل برَكاً صغيرةً بالقرب من ممر المشاة. قالت نور وهي تهز رأسها: «نُهدر الكثير من الماء». راقبت القطرات تتساقط واحدةً تلو الأخرى، مُدركةً أنها ثمينةٌ جداً ولا يجب إهدارها. قال أحمد. ووافقها الرأي: «علينا أن نعتني بمواردنا بشكل أفضل. لا يمكننا أن نتحمل الإهمال».



Farida, always full of ideas, snapped her fingers. "Let's do something about it! We can be *Water Savers*! We can show everyone that small actions matter." They went to their teacher's office and explained their plan. "We want to do a project to help our school use water wisely," Noor explained. Their teacher smiled brightly. "That's a wonderful idea. Go for it—and let me know how I can help."

فريدة، دوماً مفعمة بالأفكار، فرقعت أصابعها. «هيا بنا نفعل شيئاً حياًل ذلك! يمكننا أن نكون محافظين على المياه! يمكننا أن نظهر للجميع أن الأعمال الصغيرة مهمة». ذهبوا إلى مكتب معلمهم وشرحوا خطتهم. أوضحت نور: «نريد أن ننفذ مشروعاً لمساعدة مدرستنا على استخدام المياه بحكمة». ابتسم معلمهم ابتسامة مشرقة. «إنها فكرة رائعة. انطلقوا - وأخبروني كيف يمكنني المساعدة».



The next day, the three friends got to work. They started by walking around the school with a notebook, a camera, and curious eyes. Noor wrote down everything she noticed: leaky taps, students leaving water running while washing their hands, and hoses left on too long in the garden. Ahmed used his tablet to take photos of the problems so they could show them later in their presentations. Farida, the artist, brought out her colored markers and made bright, cheerful posters. One read: **“Turn off the tap while brushing!”** Another said: **“Every drop counts. Fix leaks fast!”** They also spoke to the school cleaner, Mr. Youssef, who was surprised but pleased to see the students taking action. “I’d love your help,” he said as they watched him fix a leaking sink. He explained how a small drip could waste liters of water each day. The kids listened carefully and learned a lot. But not everyone understood their role.

في اليوم التالي، بدأ الأصدقاء الثلاثة العمل. بدءوا بالتجول في المدرسة حاملين دفتر ملاحظات وكاميرا، وعيوناً ثاقبة. دوّنت نور كل ما لاحظته: صنابير تُسرّب المياه، وطلاب يتركون الماء جارياً أثناء غسل أيديهم، وخراطيم مياه تُركت مفتوحة لفترة طويلة في الحديقة. استخدم أحمد جهازه اللوحي (التابلت) لالتقاط صور للمشكلات ليتمكنوا من عرضها لاحقاً في عروضهم التقديمية. أخرجت فريدة، الفنانة، أقلامها القلّونة وصنعت ملصقات زاهية ومبهجة. كُتب على أحدها: «أغلق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف أسنانك بالفرشاة!» وقال آخر: «كل قطرة تُحسب. أصلح التسريبات بسرعة!». كما تحدّثوا إلى عامل النظافة في المدرسة، السيد يوسف، الذي فوجئ ولكنه سرّ برؤية الطلاب يتخذون إجراءات. قال وهم يشاهدونه يُصلح حوضاً به تسريب: «ستسرّني مساعدتكم». شرح كيف أن قطرة صغيرة يمكن أن تُهدر لترات من الماء يومياً. استمع الأطفال بعناية وتعلّموا الكثير. لكن لم يفهم الجميع دورهم.

One afternoon, a classmate said to them unkindly near the hallway. "Why do you care about water so much? It's just a few drops." Noor looked him in the eye. "Because water is life," she said firmly. "We all need it, and we all need to protect it." Her friends stood beside her, proud and quiet. They didn't let the bullying stop them. They believed in what they were doing.

في ظهيرة أحد الأيام، قال لهم أحد زملائهم بفضاظة قرب الممر: «لماذا تهتمون بالماء لهذه الدرجة؟ إنها مجرد بضع قطرات». نظرت إليه نور في عينيه. «لأن الماء حياة»، قالت بحزم. «كلنا نحتاجه، وكلنا بحاجة لحمايته». وقف أصدقاؤها بجانبها، فخورين وهادئين. لم يدعوا التنمر يوقفهم. كانوا مؤمنين بما يفعلونه.

End



Soon, their message began to spread. The school hung their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps. Teachers took a few minutes each day to talk about how to save water. Some classes even had mini-challenges to see who could save the most! One morning, the head teacher gave the children, Noor, Ahmed, and Farida certificates of achievement for their hard work. From that day on, everyone at the school became a Water Saver.

سرعان ما بدأت رسالتهم تنتشر. علقت المدرسة ملصقاتهم في الحمامات والفصول الدراسية وبالقرب من صنادير الحديقة. خُصص المعلمون بضع دقائق يوميًا للحديث عن كيفية ترشيد استهلاك المياه. حتى إن بعض الفصول الدراسية أطلقت تحديات صغيرة لمعرفة من يستطيع التوفير أكثر! في صباح أحد الأيام، وزع مدير المدرسة شهادات تقدير على الأطفال، نور وأحمد وفريدة، تقديرًا لعملهم الجاد. ومنذ ذلك اليوم، أصبح كل فرد في المدرسة محافظًا على المياه.

Test

on unit (6)

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. Ali, Mazen, and Mona are

a. cousins

b. friends

c. children

d. siblings

2. They saw a broken in their school garden.

a. pipe

b. sink

c. tap

d. board

3. Water overflowed from the pipe and formed little

a. rivers

b. seas

c. lakes

d. puddles

4. They asked the school to fix the pipe.

a. teacher

b. doctor

c. cleaner

d. nurse

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When something is, it's very valuable.

a. busy

b. little

c. colored

d. precious

2. Turn off the while brushing your teeth to save water.

a. TV

b. light

c. tap

d. tape

3. We called a plumber to fix the in the sink.

a. leak

b. hallway

c. walkway

d. poster

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****spread – achievement – buses – photos**

Noor, Ahmed, and Farida saw a dripping tap and a broken pipe at school. They decided to take action and help save water. They made posters, took ⁽¹⁾, and wrote notes about the problems. With support from their teacher and Mr. Youssef, they ⁽²⁾ their message. Soon, everyone joined in. The school hung posters, teachers talked about the problem, and the head teacher gave them certificates of ⁽³⁾ for their hard work.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Water is life. We use water for drinking, cooking, cleaning, farming, and many other things. So, we must save water. There are many ways to help save water, like turning off taps while brushing your teeth or washing your hands, fixing leaks at home quickly, and not using hoses for a long time. You can also plan with your teachers and classmates at school to create and hang posters about the importance of water or give presentations about saving water. And remember—small actions make a big difference.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about the importance of
a. air b. water c. grass d. sand
2. Small actions make a difference.
a. small b. little c. tiny d. big

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How can we save water?
.....
4. What can students do at school to show the importance of water?
.....
5. Why must we save water?
.....

(C) Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. didn't – Wael – stop – him. – the – bullying – let

.....

2. believed – doing. – They – in – what – were – they

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We (must) waste water.

2. I (hang) the poster yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Hossam and maher walked around the school

.....

2. why do you care about water

.....

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

8

“How to save water”

(taps – fix)

.....

.....

.....

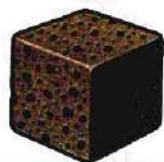
.....

.....

Review 2

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 4 Resources Around Us



granite



colored stones



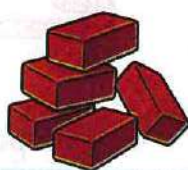
gold



clay



papyrus



bricks



temple



amulet

Unit 5 Made in Egypt



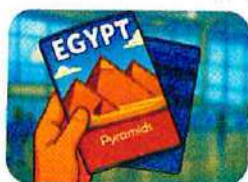
passport



luggage



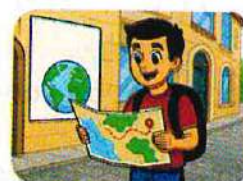
souvenir



brochure



exhibition



travel plan



guided tour



information desk



Unit 6 The Water Savers



drip



overflow



puddle



leak



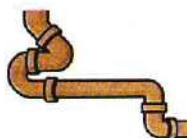
hallway



hose



tap



pipe



drop

Language Summary

Unit 4 Resources Around Us

Modal Verbs

We use **must/mustn't** to say something is very important /not allowed.

subject + **must/mustn't** + verb (infinitive) ...

Ex: – You **must** be careful when you cross the street.

– You **mustn't** break the traffic rules.

We use **should/shouldn't** to say something is a good idea/not a good idea.

subject + **should/shouldn't** + verb (infinitive) ...

Ex: – You **should** help your mother.

– You **shouldn't** drink too much soda.

**Unit 5 Made in Egypt****Past simple tense**

- We use the past simple for actions that started and finished in the past, actions that happened one after another in the past, and habits in the past.

Subject + the 2nd form of the verb ...

Affirmative

- Ex:** – He **traveled** to Italy in 2020.
– She **ate** a sandwich last night.
– I **went** out, **bought** a toy, and **ate** pizza.
– We **were** at school last Wednesday.

Negative

Subject + **did not (didn't) + verb (infinitive)** ...
was not (wasn't)/were not (weren't)

- Ex:** – Laila **didn't** study English two days ago.
– They **weren't** at home last Friday.

Did + subject + verb (infinitive) ...?

Was/Were + subject

Yes/No question

- Ex:** – **Did** you **see** your friend last winter?
Yes, I did. – No, I didn't.
– **Was** Dalia at the park yesterday?
Yes, she was. – No, she wasn't.

Wh-question

Question word + **did + subject + verb (infinitive)** ...?
was/were + subject

- Ex:** – What **did** she **do** yesterday?
– Where **were** they an hour ago?

Review 2

Test (1)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians large statues from granite.
a. needed b. cooked c. built d. carved
2. They wrote on papyrus
a. scrolls b. bottles c. pots d. boards
3. Linen is made from
a. papyrus b. cotton c. clay d. flax
4. Clay was used for pots,, and bricks.
a. jewelry b. materials c. amulets d. clothes

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This gift is beautifully
a. wrapped b. built c. embarrassed d. refreshed
2. The High Dam helps give Egypt
a. oil b. electricity c. gas d. air
3. The park is a/an place to enjoy and relax.
a. peaceful b. noisy c. ugly d. had



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

reduces – stations – electricity – sustainable

Egypt's sunny weather makes it perfect for solar energy. Benban Solar Park near Aswan is one of the world's biggest solar ⁽¹⁾ It has over 6 million panels and provides ⁽²⁾ to homes, schools, and hospitals. This project ⁽³⁾ pollution, creates jobs, and helps families. Benban also saves money and supports development. It's a smart step toward a cleaner and better future for Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One of the newest and most important places to visit is the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization (NMEC) in Cairo. This museum opened recently and shows Egypt's long history, from ancient to modern times. It is the first museum in Egypt to show all parts of history of Egyptian civilization in one place. Inside, visitors can see statues, tools, pottery, beautiful jewelry, and even real mummies in the famous Royal Mummies Hall. The National Museum of Egyptian Civilization is more than just a museum. It is a journey through time that shows how Egypt grew, changed, and stayed strong.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The NMEC shows Egypt's long
a. history b. roads c. lives d. rivers
2. The opposite of the underlined word "modern" is
a. easy b. new c. recent d. ancient

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where is the NMEC located?
.....

4. What can visitors see at the NMEC?
.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. change – and – Climate – animals – affects – their homes.

2. Ancient – wrapped – in – Egyptians – mummies – linen.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You must (respected) the class rules.

2. Did you (argues) with your sister?

7 Punctuate the following:

1. ahmed used his tablet to take photos

2. are you working on the history project

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**“Minerals”**

(rocks - natural)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Al Galala is on Al Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna.
a. found b. built c. moved d. visited
2. It has beaches and luxury
a. views b. homes c. hotels d. universities
3. It includes a famous that offers great views.
a. cable car b. train c. plane d. ship
4. Students study engineering and at Galala University.
a. math b. languages c. history d. medicine

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is the usual weather in a place over a long time.
a. Power b. Planet c. Sunshine d. Climate
2. Sand is into glass.
a. cooked b. baked c. processed d. left
3. Soha is packing her She is traveling to France.
a. plan b. luggage c. trips d. vehicles

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****Iron – jewelry – desert – liquid**

Egypt has many useful minerals. Oil is a black ⁽¹⁾ It brings money when Egypt sells it. Natural gas helps us cook, heat homes, and make electricity for lights. Gold is shiny and yellow. Ancient Egyptians used it long ago for ⁽²⁾ Egypt still finds gold today. ⁽³⁾ is strong and helps make buildings and cars. Minerals in the soil help plants grow strong and big.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The High Dam is a large wall built across the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. Egyptians built it between 1960 and 1970. It was officially completed and opened in 1970. The dam holds a large lake called Lake Nasser, one of the world's largest artificial lakes. Egyptians built the High Dam to solve problems like, flooding and drought. It also provides clean electricity and gives farmers water to grow crops. The dam improved life in Egypt by saving water, helping farms grow, and producing power. It is one of the country's most important projects for development.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mainly about
a. the Nile River b. the High Dam c. Lake Nasser d. Aswan
2. Lake Nasser is one of the world's artificial lakes.
a. largest b. smallest c. longest d. shortest

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where is the High Dam?

.....

4. When was the High Dam opened?

.....

5. Why is the High Dam important?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. water? – care – about – you – Why – do

.....

2. accurate – research – Doing – helped – find – me – information.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We (shouldn't) care about people we love.

2. Noha (aren't) sleep early last night.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Where did salma find information for her research

.....

2. Galala university welcomes students from Egypt and abroad

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

“The Grand Egyptian Museum”

(mummies – statues)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Tests

Test 1

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mostafa El-Sayed was born in
a. China b. France c. Egypt d. England
- He became an expert in and nanoscience.
a. chemistry b. math c. history d. art
- He is known for his work with nanoparticles.
a. silver b. wood c. clay d. gold
- He received many important for his discoveries.
a. awards b. prizes c. medals d. money

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- People visit Ras Mohamed to swim,, and dive.
a. snorkel b. clean c. read d. learn
- Workers cloth using wool and a loom.
a. paint b. build c. weave d. wash
- is using your knowledge to make good decisions.
a. Wisdom b. Bundle c. Rug d. Village

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****keep – vehicles – person – control**

There are many jobs that help our community. Mechanics fix ⁽¹⁾ Water resources engineers make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools. Paramedics help people in emergencies. Traffic officers help people cross the roads and ⁽²⁾ cars. Street cleaners clean the streets and help ⁽³⁾ the city beautiful. Every job is important and helps make the community better.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Laila visits her grandpa's garden every Monday. She is amazed by how green and healthy it looks. Her grandpa explains that he takes care of it daily, giving the plants sunlight, water, and care. He grows many useful plants like basil, mint, and parsley, which are common in Egyptian meals. Mint is also used in tea to help relax. He also grows hibiscus and jasmine. Hibiscus is used for drinks, and jasmine smells lovely. In his garden, there are also guava, fig, and olive trees. Olives grow slowly but give healthy oil.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Laila visits her grandpa's garden a week.
a. twice b. four times c. once d. three times
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a. garden b. smell c. oil d. tea

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What plants does Laila's grandpa grow in his garden?

.....

4. How does Laila's grandpa take care of his garden?

.....

5. Why is Laila amazed by her grandpa's garden?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. mom. – her – help – Nour – wants – to

.....

2. protect – our – We – country. – can

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. (Were) Ola at home yesterday? – Yes, she was.

2. My sister is able to (speaks) French well.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. why do you have so many thorns

.....

2. Al galala City is a modern city in Egypt

.....

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

8

“The Nile River”

(important – soil)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. People wake up in Beni Suef governorate.
a. late b. happily c. weakly d. early
2. Many people work as
a. farmers b. doctors c. teachers d. firefighters
3. Other people work in They make cement and clothes.
a. farms b. schools c. factories d. offices
4. At, families eat lunch together.
a. morning b. evening c. noon d. night

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We put the in the bin to keep the place clean.
a. clothes b. desks c. garbage d. books
2. We saw ancient in the museum.
a. mummies b. people c. thorns d. jobs
3. He uses natural to take care of his garden.
a. weeds b. fertilizer c. nest d. fur

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****statues – screens – explore – Grand**

Egypt is known for its pyramids, temples, and ancient stories. Tourists visit it every year to ⁽¹⁾ its wonders. It has an exciting new place, which is the ⁽²⁾ Egyptian Museum (GEM). It is near the Pyramids. It took almost 20 years to finish. Visitors can see ⁽³⁾, golden jewelry, tools, and real mummies. The museum shows Egypt's history in a modern way.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Benban Solar Park is a large solar energy project in Egypt. It is near Aswan and has over six million solar panels. It was built between 2018 and 2019. The park gives clean electricity to homes, schools, and hospitals. It helps protect the environment and keeps the air clean. Benban also creates jobs for many people, like engineers and builders from nearby villages. These jobs help families and improve local communities. The project uses sunlight instead of fuel, which saves money. Benban is good for people and nature. It shows that Egypt is working for a better, cleaner future.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Benban Solar Park was between 2018 and 2019.
 a. cleaned b. used c. destroyed d. built
2. The jobs help families and improve communities.
 a. local b. dangerous c. large d. awful

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of energy does Benban Solar Park use?

4. Why is Benban Solar Park important for Egypt?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. a famous – Mohamed – park. – national – Ras – is

2. the – Cairo, – is – sunny. – In – weather

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You shouldn't (wasting) water.

2. She (play) basketball every Tuesday.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Farmers in salma's village harvest the crops

2. the dam sends electricity to homes schools, and factories.

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

– Your name is Rahma and your email address is (rahma@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Nour and her email address is (nour@gmail.com).

"Saving energy"
(solar – turn off)

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

3

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Alexandria, the weather is cold, windy, and
a. rainy b. snowy c. cloudy d. hot
2. In Cairo, the weather is
a. windy b. hot c. cold d. warm
3. People are enjoying their time outside in
a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Port Said
4. In Aswan, the is very strong.
a. wind b. cloud c. sun d. snow

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The boys couldn't break a of sticks because it was too hard.
a. plant b. bundle c. picture d. blanket
2. Dr. El-Sayed became a global in chemistry and nanoscience.
a. award b. machine c. expert d. tailor
3. Egypt is a sunny country, making it ideal for energy.
a. solar b. wind c. water d. coal

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****care – coral – proud – dive**

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It is known for its beautiful ⁽¹⁾ reefs and colorful fish. People from all over the world visit it to swim, snorkel, and ⁽²⁾ Ras Mohamed is a protected area. This means that people must take ⁽³⁾ of the land, sea, and animals. It is important to follow the rules to keep the park clean and safe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Energy is important for our daily lives. We use it to cook, watch TV, and charge phones. In Egypt, people use electricity, gas, and solar power. Solar and wind energy are clean and help the environment. Egypt's sunshine makes solar power a smart choice. To save energy, we can turn off lights and devices when not in use, close the fridge quickly, and walk or bike for short distances. Saving energy protects the planet and stops climate change. By doing small actions every day, we can become energy heroes and help our country and world stay healthy and clean.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about
a. climate b. environment c. energy d. electricity
2. The underlined phrasal verb "turn off" means to off.
a. switch b. open c. save d. use

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What types of energy do people use in Egypt?
.....

4. Why is energy important for our daily lives?
.....

5. How can we save energy?
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. tiny – of very – things. – the study – is – Nanoscience

.....

2. a modern – in – Egypt. – city – Al Galala City – is

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What (does) you eat yesterday?

2. You (mustn't) wait for the red light to cross the road.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Last thursday, our school organized a trip

.....

2. we can clean garbage this weekend

.....

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

8

“Food waste problem”

(leftover – donate)

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The chalice is made of
 a. brick b. gold c. alabaster d. granite
2. It has handles.
 a. five b. three c. two d. four
3. It is a symbol of eternal life and
 a. beauty b. peace c. love d. war
4. People believed it helped the king forever in the afterlife.
 a. walk b. eat c. sleep d. live

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Energy resources, like oil and gas, can the Earth.
 a. cook b. pollute c. eat d. close
2. We did many fun during the school trip.
 a. activities b. meals c. pictures d. buses
3. is a sudden situation that needs quick help.
 a. Research b. Emergency c. Community d. Vehicle

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hibiscus – tasty – fertilizer – waters

I visited my cousin's garden. I was amazed by how green and healthy it is. My cousin explains that he takes care of the plants every day so they can grow well. He ⁽¹⁾ it daily. He pulls out weeds and uses natural ⁽²⁾ He grows herbs, ⁽³⁾, and jasmine. He also grows guava and fig trees. These plants provide food, drinks, and fresh air.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous Egyptian scientist born in 1933. He studied at Ain Shams University and later continued his research in the United States. He became a global expert in chemistry and nanoscience. Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things. Dr. El-Sayed discovered how gold nanoparticles can help doctors treat cancer. One of his important discoveries is called "El-Sayed's Rule." He has received many major awards, including the U.S. National Medal of Science. Dr. El-Sayed is a science hero who makes all Egyptians proud. His work helps people and inspires students around the world to learn science.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous scientist.
 a. American b. French c. Egyptian d. Italian
2. He became a global expert in and nanoscience.
 a. chemistry b. biology c. mathematics d. physics

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed study before going to the United States?

4. What is nanoscience?

5. Why is Dr. El-Sayed's work with gold nanoparticles important?

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. admired – rose. – beautiful – the – Every – creature

.....

2. and – breakfast – People – the house. – prepare – clean

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Are you (watched) TV now?

2. Sami is able (in) speak English.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Lotus Chalice was found in King tutankhamun's tomb

.....

2. can we protect our country and planet

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A day in Egypt"

(souvenirs – museum)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

5

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used stone, clay, papyrus,, wood, and gold.

- a. linen b. silver c. plastic d. metal

2. Stone is used in our modern

- a. books b. baskets c. clothes d. buildings

3. is used for making clothes.

- a. Gold b. Papyrus c. Linen d. Stone

4. Clay is used for making and bricks.

- a. pots b. pens c. cans d. rings

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On the way, we saw green farms, dunes, and camels.

- a. wind b. sand c. sun d. water

2. In Egyptian schools, the students the flag every day.

- a. sing b. trick c. salute d. chat

3. My brother will me to the museum tomorrow.

- a. build b. accompany c. draw d. fix



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

electricity – grains – flooding – drought

The High Dam is a huge wall across the Nile River. It helps stop ⁽¹⁾ and stores water for the whole year. Egyptians built it in Aswan to get clean ⁽²⁾ and help farmers grow more crops with regular water. It also solves the problem of ⁽³⁾ It sends electricity to homes, hospitals, and schools. The High Dam supports life across Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a wonderful place to learn about Egypt's history. It took almost 20 years to finish. It is located near the Pyramids of Giza. Visitors can see real mummies, golden jewelry, statues, and King Khufu's Solar Boat. The museum uses smart screens and amazing shows to make learning fun. It tells the story of Egypt from the beginning to the end of the pharaohs' time. The museum also has an information desk to help visitors. The museum is more than a building; it's a journey through time and a proud part of Egypt's modern and ancient culture.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about the Grand Egyptian
a. Hospital b. Library c. Street d. Museum
- The underlined word "ancient" is the opposite of
a. short b. modern c. old d. long

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What can visitors see inside the Grand Egyptian Museum?
.....
- Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum located?
.....
- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. to – a water – I – be – engineer. – want – resources

.....

2. in – is – factories. – Paper – processed

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. (Did) you walk to school every day? – Yes, I do.

2. Amira should (eating) healthy food.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. did you love spending time in Egypt

.....

2. my little brother can't ride a bike yet

.....

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

8**"A trip to Wadi El Rayan"**

– How did you go there?

– What did you do there?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. Egypt has many valuable minerals the ground.
a. above b. under c. on d. outside
2. We can find oil in the Desert and Sinai.
a. Western b. Eastern c. Southern d. Northern
3. Oil is a liquid.
a. black b. yellow c. brown d. blue
4. Natural gas is used for, heating, and making electricity.
a. drinking b. sailing c. cooking d. fishing

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a group of things tied together.
a. moral b. bundle c. character d. stick
2. The Ancient Egyptians the Pyramids thousands of years ago.
a. meant b. threw c. built d. decided
3. Farmers use for irrigation.
a. sand b. water c. wind d. sun



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

good – vegetables – south – swim

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile flows through Egypt from (1) to north. It is a home to many animals like Nile perch, tilapia, and crocodiles. In the past, the river flooded and brought (2) soil. Farmers used this soil to grow food like wheat and (3) Today, many people still depend on the Nile for their jobs and food.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

A long time ago, a farmer lived with his three sons in a village near the Nile. He worked hard on his farm, but his sons always argued and didn't work together. This made the old man sad and worried. One day, he wanted to teach them a lesson. He showed them a bundle of sticks they couldn't break. Then, he gave them single sticks, and they broke them easily. He told them, "You are strong together, but weak alone." After that, the sons understood and started working together. They learned that unity gives strength. The family lived happily and worked in peace after that.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lived with his three sons in a village near the Nile.
a. paramedic b. doctor c. teacher d. farmer
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the
a. sons b. lessons c. sticks d. farms

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why was the farmer sad and worried?

.....

4. What lesson did the father teach using the bundle of sticks?

.....

5. How did the family live after the sons understood the lesson?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. like – handles. – a white – It – flower – with – looks
-

2. Scientists – ancient – found – of – the skeletons – whales.
-

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Dina (**does**) not clean her room yesterday.
2. We (**is**) having lunch in the dining room now.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. they used papyrus wood, and linen.
-
2. Dr. el-Sayed has received many major awards
-

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

8**“Al Galala City”**

- Where is it?
 - What does the city have?
-
-
-
-

Test

7

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wadi El Rayan National Park is in
a. Giza b. Alexandria c. Fayoum d. Beni Suef
2. We rode the for two hours.
a. train b. bus c. car d. plane
3. We saw green farms, sand dunes, and walking in the distance.
a. camels b. horses c. goats d. cows
4. Wadi El Rayan protects animals and plants.
a. huge b. small c. famous d. rare

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To is to cover something by putting material or cloth around it.
a. wrap b. survive c. dance d. jump
2. Youssef wants to be a/an because he enjoys fixing cars.
a. tailor b. paramedic c. mechanic d. architect
3. The cactus was rough and had sharp
a. beaks b. thorns c. teeth d. claws



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

classmates – problem – garbage – posters

I was in the park yesterday when I noticed garbage near it. People threw garbage everywhere. It's bad for the environment. So I decided to clean it. I made ⁽¹⁾ to ask people to use the bin. I also asked my ⁽²⁾ to join me. My classmates and I told our teacher about that idea. He liked it and the next day he brought us ⁽³⁾ bags.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The High Dam in Aswan is one of Egypt's most important projects. It was built between 1960 and 1970 to stop floods and store water in Lake Nasser. The dam gives people water all year and protects cities from flooding. It also produces clean electricity for homes, schools, and hospitals. Farmers use the stored water for irrigation to grow crops like fruits and vegetables. The High Dam helps Egypt every day by solving water problems, supporting farming, and providing power. It shows how the country is growing and still helps people and the country in many ways.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** The High Dam is in
a. Cairo **b.** Aswan
c. Luxor **d.** Alexandria
- 2.** The dam gives people all year.
a. sand **b.** wind **c.** water **d.** fire

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the High Dam show?
4. Why do farmers use the water from the High Dam?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. more – He – about – sons. – became – worried – his

.....

2. keep – cleaner – A street – clean. – the – helps – city

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. (**Does**) Ali and Sameh go to the club after school?

2. You should (**going**) to the doctor when you are sick.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. In alexandria, the weather is windy

.....

2. they stopped fighting and worked together

.....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

- Your name is Fady and your email address is (fady@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Mark and his email address is (mark@yahoo.com).

"A day at school"

(national anthem – short break)

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

8

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. Amina accompanies her to catch fish.
a. father b. brother c. grandfather d. uncle
2. Salma's family is from
a. Alexandria b. Gharbia c. Aswan d. Damietta
3. Salma's family sells crops in the
a. field b. farm c. market d. store
4. Hassan helps make and dye wool.
a. pots b. bags c. rugs d. paintings

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fishermen use fishing to catch fish.
a. looms b. nets c. colors d. recordings
2. My brother is a He brings packages and food to homes.
a. mechanic b. nurse
c. teacher d. delivery person
3. People garbage everywhere. That's not okay.
a. decorate b. throw c. clean d. cross

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

factories – recycle – helped – dried

People make many man-made resources using natural materials. Bricks are made by mixing clay and water, then ⁽¹⁾ or baked. They are used to build houses, schools, and walls. Paper is made from trees and processed in ⁽²⁾ for writing and reading. People also ⁽³⁾ paper to make notebooks and newspapers. Glass is made from sand. It is used in windows, mirrors, and cups.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Al Galala City is a modern, smart city in Egypt, built on Al Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna to reduce crowding in older cities. It has luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car. The city is also a center for education and science. Galala University welcomes students to study medicine, engineering, and more. It was once empty, but now it's full of life, with people working in tourism, teaching, and business. Many families are moving in to enjoy the clean air and peaceful environment. The government plans to build more homes, parks, and roads in the future.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Al Galala City is built to reduce crowding in cities.
a. old b. big c. quiet d. new
- Galala University welcomes to study medicine, engineering, and more.
a. teachers b. students c. doctors d. scientists

(B) Answer the following questions:

- Why do many families choose to move to Al Galala City?

.....

- What are interesting things does the city have?

.....

- What does the government plan to build in the future?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. have? – do – plants – you – What – of – kinds

.....

2. money. – it – important – because – The project – is – saves

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. (Could) you clean your room today? – Yes, I can.

2. Where do you (lives), Maged?

7 Punctuate the following:

1. They grow cotton beans, and vegetables

.....

2. people don't think about wasting food

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**“The High Dam”**

– What is the High Dam?

– Why did Egyptians build it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

9

(A) Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Benban Solar Park was built between 2018 and 2019 in
a. Giza b. Aswan c. Luxor d. Cairo
2. It has over 6 panels.
a. thousand b. hundred c. million d. billion
3. It provides to homes, schools, and hospitals.
a. energy b. electricity c. water d. technology
4. This project creates jobs, saves, and protects nature.
a. people b. animals c. cars d. money

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People wait for the red light to the street.
a. sign b. ride c. cross d. throw
2. Tourists come to explore the of Egypt.
a. wonders b. sticks c. questions d. weeds
3. My dad worked hard to grow on his farm.
a. mummies b. sticks c. nets d. crops

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****plants – trips – waterfalls – fossil**

Wadi El Rayan is in Fayoum. On the way to Wadi El Rayan, you can see green farms and sand dunes. When you go there, you can see lakes, ⁽¹⁾, and palm trees. There are rare animals and ⁽²⁾ There is also Wadi El-Hitan where there are ancient whale skeletons and a ⁽³⁾ museum. A trip to Wadi El Rayan is full of nature, history, and fun with friends.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Maged and his family enjoy a fun and exciting day in Cairo, visiting Khan El Khalili. They buy souvenirs like bags, lamps, and a necklace for his sister. They walk through the old streets, smell fresh bread, and watch workers make furniture by hand. They take photos near beautiful buildings and doors with Arabic designs. At a small museum, they learn about Egyptian history by seeing old coins, clothes, and tools. Maged's brother plays drums with children in the street. In the evening, they visit ancient sites and take more photos. Maged enjoys learning about Egyptian culture.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They buy like bags and lamps.
a. doors b. photos c. souvenirs d. streets
2. At the museum, they see old coins, clothes, and
a. food b. tools c. animals d. games

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who plays drums with children in the street?

.....

4. How do the workers in the shops make the furniture?

.....

5. When do they visit ancient sites?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. we – oil – find – Where – in – do – Egypt?

2. puddles – formed – walkway. – Water – little – the – near

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ali is (plays) tennis now.

2. We (must) throw garbage in the street.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. what materials did the Ancient Egyptians use

2. people buy souvenirs to remember their trips

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

“Jobs that help our community”

(paramedic – mechanic)

Listening Scripts

Lesson (1) Activities

Unit (1)

Page 17

It is a great day in Cairo. Maged and his family visit Khan El Khalili. They buy souvenirs like bags and bracelets. They watch people baking bread and making furniture. They take photos near old buildings with Arabic designs. At the museum, they see old coins and tools. They enjoy music and drums. It is very exciting and fun.

Unit (2)

Page 56

Laila's grandpa grows herbs like mint and parsley, and fruits like guava and fig. He waters the plants every morning and uses natural fertilizer to help them grow. Laila learned that Egyptians grew olive trees many years ago. She asked to help in the garden next weekend.

Unit (3)

Page 93

Ali is making a list of some jobs that help our community. On the list, he writes about mechanics, street cleaners, paramedics, and traffic officers. Mechanics fix our vehicles. Street cleaners clean the streets. Paramedics help people in emergencies. Traffic officers help people cross the road. Ali wants to be a paramedic. These jobs are different, but they all help people.

Unit (4)

Page 138

I visited the Cairo Museum yesterday. I saw a fascinating pot from Ancient Egypt. It is made from clay. The Ancient Egyptians used clay to make other things, such as jars, bricks, and small statues. They used it to make amulets, too. Amulets are small objects people believed could protect them. We still use clay today to make pots.

Unit (5)

Page 172

The Grand Egyptian Museum is the newest and most exciting place to visit in Egypt. It stands near the Pyramids of Giza. The visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip. Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and the Solar Boat. The Solar Boat belonged to King Khufu. The museum has an information desk and uses modern technology.

Unit Tests

Unit (1)

Page 47

My name is Hana. I live in Beni Suef with my family. I wake up early every day. I clean the house with my sister. My mom prepares breakfast. My dad goes to work. He works on a farm. He grows beans and vegetables. At noon, we eat lunch together. We usually eat rice, bread, and vegetables. I love living in Beni Suef.

**Unit (2)****Page 83**

Our garden is full of life and beauty. Grandpa takes care of it every day by watering the plants, pulling out the weeds, and using natural fertilizer. We grow herbs like mint and parsley, flowers like hibiscus and jasmine, and fruit trees like guava, fig, and olive. The plants give us food, fresh air, and joy.

Unit (3)**Page 120**

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist who loved learning from a young age. He studied at Ain Shams University, then continued his research in the United States. His achievements helped doctors a lot in treating cancer. He became a leader in nanoscience and created "El-Sayed's Rule." He received the U.S. National Medal of Science for his great work in science.

Unit (4)**Page 163**

The High Dam in Aswan is a huge wall across the Nile River. It helps stop flooding and stores water for the whole year. Egyptians built it to solve water problems and to get clean electricity. The dam also helps farmers grow crops and protects cities. It sends electricity to homes, hospitals, and schools. The High Dam supports life across Egypt.

Unit (5)**Page 199**

A long time ago, a farmer lived with his three sons in a small village by the Nile. The sons always argued and didn't work together.

One day, the father asked them to break a bundle of sticks, but they couldn't break it. When the father untied the bundle, they broke single sticks easily. He told the bundle, "This is the power of unity. Together, you are strong."

Unit (6)**Page 214**

Ali, Mazen, and Mona are friends. They saw a broken pipe in their school garden. Water overflowed from the pipe and formed little puddles. They looked for a way to save the water. They asked the school cleaner to fix the pipe. The school cleaner was pleased to see the students taking action and caring about saving water.

Reviews (1&2)**Review (1) – Test (1)****Page 127**

I'm Adel. This is my school day in Egypt. School day begins at 7:30 a.m. We stand in line, salute the flag, and sing the national anthem. Then, we go to our classrooms. We study Arabic, English, math, and science. At 10:30, we have a short break. During the break, I eat a snack and play with my friends in the playground.

Review (1) – Test (2)**Page 130**

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist. He was born in Egypt in 1933. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo. Dr. El-Sayed became a global expert in



chemistry and nanoscience. Nanoscience is about studying tiny things. Dr. El-Sayed has received many major awards, like the U.S. National Medal of Science. He's a true hero of science!

Review (2) – Test (1) Page 220

The Ancient Egyptians used many natural materials in their daily lives. We still use many of them today. They carved large statues from granite. They wrote on papyrus scrolls and made clothes from linen, which is made from flax. Clay was used for pots, amulets, and bricks. They believed amulets could protect them. These materials were very strong and useful.

Review (2) – Test (2) Page 223

Al Galala is a new city in Egypt built on Al Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. It has a water park, beaches, and luxury hotels. The city includes a famous cable car that offers great views from the mountain to the sea. It also has Galala University, where students study engineering and medicine. Many families are moving there now.

Final Tests

Test (1) Page 226

Mostafa El-Sayed is a very famous scientist. He was born in Egypt in 1933. He became an expert in chemistry and nanoscience. After studying in Cairo, he continued his research in

the United States. He is known for his work with gold nanoparticles to help detect and treat cancer. He received many important awards for his discoveries.

Test (2) Page 229

Daily life is simple in Beni Suef governorate. People wake up early. They clean the house and prepare their breakfast. Many people work as farmers. They work on farms. They grow different crops, like cotton, beans, and vegetables. Other people work in factories. They make cement and clothes. At noon, families eat lunch together. They eat rice, bread, and vegetables.

Test (3) Page 232

Today, the weather is very different in each city in Egypt. In Alexandria, it's cold, windy, and rainy. So people are staying indoors. In Cairo, the sun is shining and the weather is warm. People are enjoying their time outside. They are in gardens. In Aswan, it's very hot. The sun is very strong, so people are resting in the shade.

Test (4) Page 235

I saw a fascinating chalice in the museum last week. It's made of alabaster. It looks like a white lotus flower. It has two handles. It is from King Tutankhamun's tomb. It was used in special ceremonies like funeral rituals. It is a symbol of eternal life and beauty. People believed it helped the king live forever in the afterlife.

**Test (5)****Page 238**

The Ancient Egyptians used many materials to make different things. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and gold. These materials were natural, strong, and useful. They lasted a long time. Today, we still use some of these amazing materials. Stones are used in our modern buildings. Linen is used for making clothes. Clay is used for making pots and bricks.

Test (6)**Page 241**

Egypt has many valuable minerals under the ground. Egypt has a lot of oil, rocks, and metals. We find oil deep under the ground, especially in the Western Desert and Sinai. Oil is a black liquid. Egypt also has a lot of natural gas that we can use for cooking, heating, and making electricity for lights and TVs.

Test (7)**Page 244**

Last week, we went on a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum. We left school early and rode the bus for two hours. On the way, we saw green farms, sand dunes, and camels walking in the distance. The guide showed us the lakes, the waterfalls, and the palm trees. He explained that Wadi El Rayan protects rare animals and plants.

Test (8)**Page 247**

Some students shared how people live and work in their villages. Amina, from Damietta, accompanies her father to catch fish early in the morning. Salma's family in Gharbia grows crops and sells them in the market. Hassan, from the Dakhla Oasis, helps make rugs and dye wool. These stories show us how villagers work hard and support their families.

Test (9)**Page 250**

Benban Solar Park is one of the world's largest solar stations. It was built between 2018 and 2019 in Aswan. It has over 6 million panels. It provides electricity to homes, schools, and hospitals. It reduces pollution and keeps the air clean. This project creates jobs, saves money, and protects nature. It helps local communities grow and supports Egypt's development.